

FORM 1 U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DO/EO/US) CONCERNING A FILING UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371		ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER JANS-0027
		U.S. APPLICATION NO. (if known see 37 C.F.R. 1.5) 10/030202

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/EP00/05676	INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE 20 June 2000	PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED 28 June 1999 and 11 February 2000
--	--	---

TITLE OF INVENTION **RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS**

APPLICANT(S) FOR DO/EO/US **Frans Eduard JANSSENS, et al.**

Applicant herewith submits to the United States Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the following items and other information:

1. ☒ This is a **FIRST** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.
2. ☐ This is a **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.
3. ☒ This express request to begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f)) at any time rather than delay examination until the expiration of the applicable time limit set in 35 U.S.C. 371(b) and PCT Articles 22 and 39(1).
4. ☒ A proper Demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by the 19th month from the earliest claimed priority date.
5. ☒ A copy of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)).
 - a. ☐ is transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau).
 - b. ☒ has been transmitted by the International Bureau.
 - c. ☐ is not required, as the application was filed in the United States Receiving Office (RO/US)
6. ☐ A translation of the International Application into English (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)).
7. ☒ Amendments to the claims of the International Application under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3))
 - a. ☐ are transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau).
 - b. ☐ have been transmitted by the International Bureau.
 - c. ☐ have not been made; however, the time limit for making such amendments has NOT expired.
 - d. ☒ have not been made and will not be made.
8. ☐ A translation of the amendments to the claims under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3)).
9. ☒ An oath or declaration of the inventor(s) 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).
10. ☐ A translation of the annexes to the International Preliminary Examination Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)).

Items 11. to 16. below concern other document(s) or information included:

11. ☐ An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98.
12. ☐ An assignment document for recording. A separate cover sheet in compliance with 37 CFR 3.28 and 3.31 is included.
13. ☒ A FIRST preliminary amendment.
☐ A SECOND or SUBSEQUENT preliminary amendment.
14. ☐ A substitute specification.
15. ☐ A change of power of attorney and/or address letter.
16. ☒ Other items or information:
 - A copy of the Published PCT Application by WIPO under No. WO 01/00611, including the search report.
 - A copy of the International Preliminary Examination Report.
 - Associate Power of Attorney.

EXPRESS MAIL Mailing Label No. **EL 899364558 US**
 Date of Deposit: **27 December 2001**

EL899364558US

U.S. APPLICATION NO. (if known 37 CFR 1.5)

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO.

ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER

10/030202

PCT EP00/05676

JANS-0027

17. The following fees are submitted:

Basic National Fee (37 CFR 1.492(a)(1) - (5)):

Neither international preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482)
nor international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO
and International Search Report not prepared by the EPO or JPO.....

\$1,040.00

International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482 not paid to USPTO
but International Search Report has been prepared by the EPO or JPO.....

\$890.00

International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to USPTO but
international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO.....

\$740.00

International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) but
all claims did not satisfy provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4).....

\$710.00

International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) and
all claims satisfied provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4).....

\$100.00

ENTER APPROPRIATE BASIC FEE AMOUNT =

\$ 890.00

Surcharge of \$130.00 for furnishing the oath or declaration later than _ 20 _ 30 months from
the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(e)).

\$

Claims	Number Filed	Number Extra	Rate		
Total claims	50- 20 =	30	X \$18.00	\$ 540.00	
Independent Claims	1- 3 =	0	x \$84.00	\$	
Multiple dependent claims(s) (if applicable)			+ \$280.00	\$ 280.00	

TOTAL OF ABOVE CALCULATIONS =

\$1,710.00

Applicant claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27. The fees indicated above are
reduced by 1/2.

\$

SUBTOTAL =

\$1,710.00

Processing fee of \$130.00 for furnishing the English translation later than the _ 20 _ 30 months
from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f)).

+

\$

TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =

\$1,710.00

Fee for recording the enclosed assignment (37 CFR 1.21(h)). The assignment must be
accompanied by an appropriate cover sheet (37 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40.00 per property

+

TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED =

\$1,710.00

Amount to be:
refunded

\$

charged

\$

- a. ☒ A check in the amount of \$ 1,710.00 to cover the above fee is enclosed.
- b. ☐ Please charge my Deposit Account No. 23-3050 in the amount of \$ _____ to cover the above fees. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.
- c. ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 23-3050. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

NOTE: Where an appropriate time limit under 37 CFR 1.494 or 1.495 has not been met, a petition to revive (37 CFR 1.137(a) or (b)) must be filed and granted to restore the application to pending status.

SEND ALL CORRESPONDENCE TO:

Diane B. Elderkin
Woodcock Washburn LLP
One Liberty Place - 46th Floor
Philadelphia, PA 19103
(215) 568-3100

SIGNATURE

Wendy A. Choi

NAME

36,697

REGISTRATION NUMBER

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re patent application of : Frans Eduard Janssens *et al.*

5 **Intl. Appln. No.** : PCT/EP00/05676 **Group No.** : Not Yet Assigned

Intl. Filing Date : 20 June 2000 **Examiner** : Not Yet Assigned

For : Respiratory Syncytial Virus Replication Inhibitors

10 **BOX PCT**

Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

15 Dear Sir:

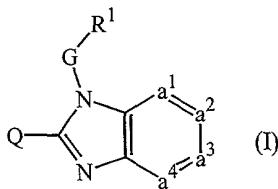
PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Prior to action on the merits, applicants request that the above-identified application be amended.

20 **In the claims:**

Please amend claims 1-17 as follows:

- 25 1. (amended) A method of manufacturing a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, comprising the step of providing a compound of formula



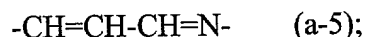
a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof,

30 wherein-a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a bivalent radical of formula

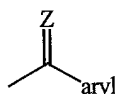
-CH=CH-CH=CH- (a-1);

-N=CH-CH=CH- (a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH- (a-3);

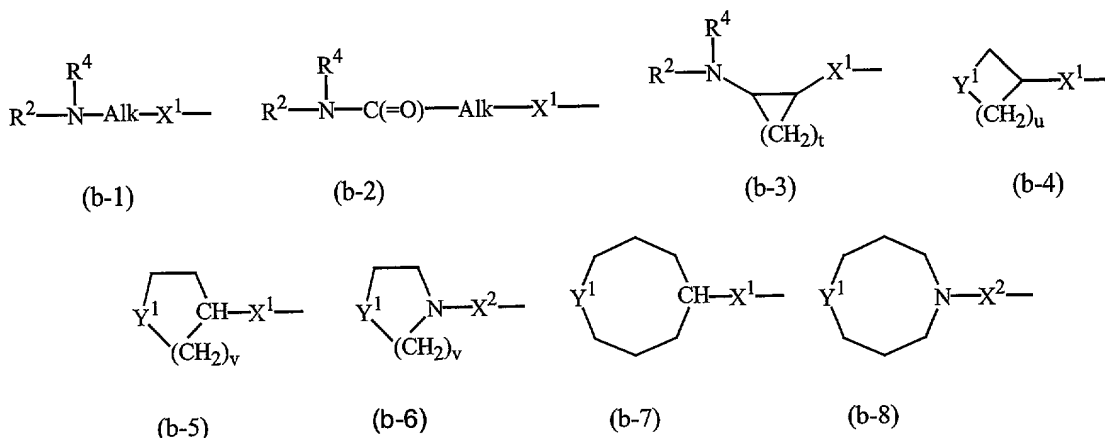


wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₄alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or a radical of formula



wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula



wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula -NR²- or -CH(NR²R⁴)-;

X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be

replaced by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkyloxy, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C_{1-10} alkanediyl;

R^1 is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylthio, C_{1-6} alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonylamino, C_{1-6} alkyl- SO_2-NR^{5c} -, aryl- SO_2-NR^{5c} -, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, $-C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}$, $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, halo($-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, C_{1-6} alkyloxy($-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy($-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino($-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R^2 is hydrogen, formyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, or C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{2-5} alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy;

R^4 is hydrogen, C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^{5a} , R^{5b} , R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl; or

R^{5a} and R^{5b} , or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula $-(CH_2)_s-$ wherein s is 4 or 5;

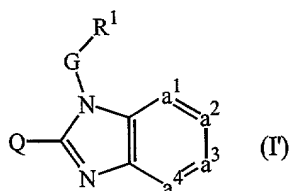
R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, formyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl or C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl,

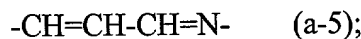
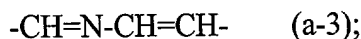
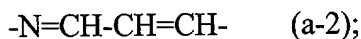
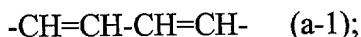
polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

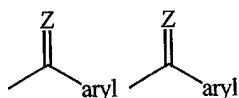
2. A compound of formula (I')



a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a radical of formula

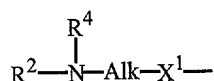


wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₄alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or a radical of formula

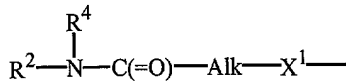


wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

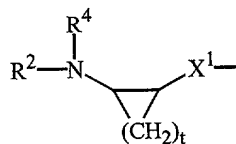
Q is a radical of formula



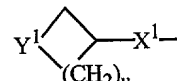
(b-1)



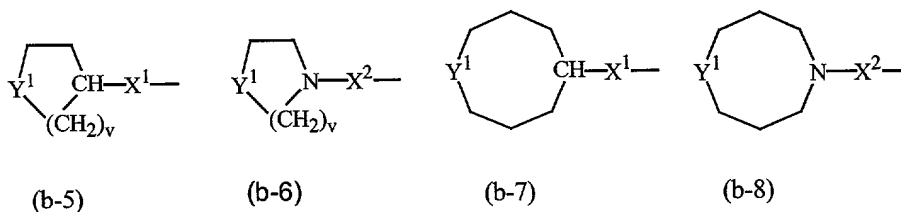
(b-2)



(b-3)



(b-4)



wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula -NR²- or -CH(NR²R⁴)-;

X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃),
 5 CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

10 whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl;

15 R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-
 20 or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-;

25 each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R² is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and

5

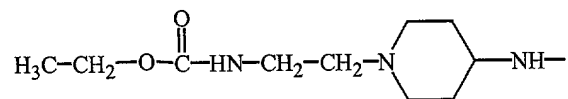
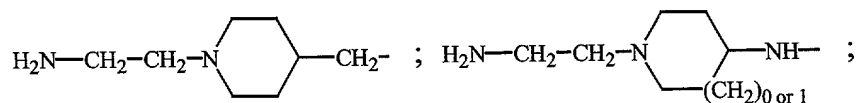
R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;


R^{5a} and R^{5b} , or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -

10

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4,

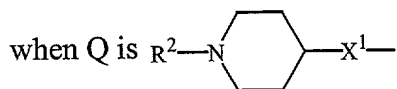
15

$$\text{HN} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{---} \quad \text{---} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \end{array} \text{---NH---} \quad ; \quad \text{HN} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{---} \quad \text{---} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \end{array} \text{---CH}_2\text{---} \quad ; \quad \text{HN} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{---} \quad \text{---} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \end{array} \text{---O---} \quad ;$$


when Q is 

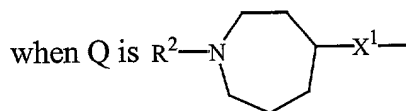
wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$ or $CH(CH_3)$, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

- 5 4. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein:



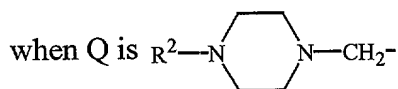
wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$ or $CH(CH_3)$, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyridyl substituted with 1 or 2 C_{1-6} alkyloxy, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

5. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein:



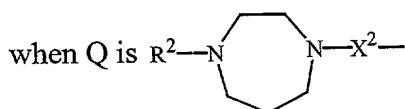
wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$ or $CH(CH_3)$, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

6. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein:



then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

7. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein:



wherein X^2 is CH_2 or a direct bond, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

5 8. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein the compound is:

(±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1*H*-
benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; 2-
[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-3-
pyridinol; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-dimethyl-
10 1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-
amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-
benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-hydroxypropyl)amino]-1*H*-
benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-
1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine
15 tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-
chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-*N*-[1-
(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-
imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-
4-piperidinyl]-6-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
20 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1*H*-
benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-
methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-
amine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-6-methyl-2-
pyridinyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-
25 amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[3-amino-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1*H*-
benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-
piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol
tetrahydrochloride; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-
methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-
30 aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-

6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1); (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

9. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein the compound is:

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[3-[[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-amine; 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperazineethanamine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; *N*-

[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride; 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-2-oxazolemethanol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[(3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1); ethyl 5-[[2-[[1-[[2-[[1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidiny]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate; 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridiny)methyl]-7-methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridiny)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2-pyridiny)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; N-[1-(6-methyl-2-pyridiny)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4-piperidinamine; a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

10. (amended) A method of using as a medicine a compound as claimed in any one of claims 2 to 9.

11. (amended) A method of manufacturing a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, comprising the step of providing the compound as claimed in claim 9.

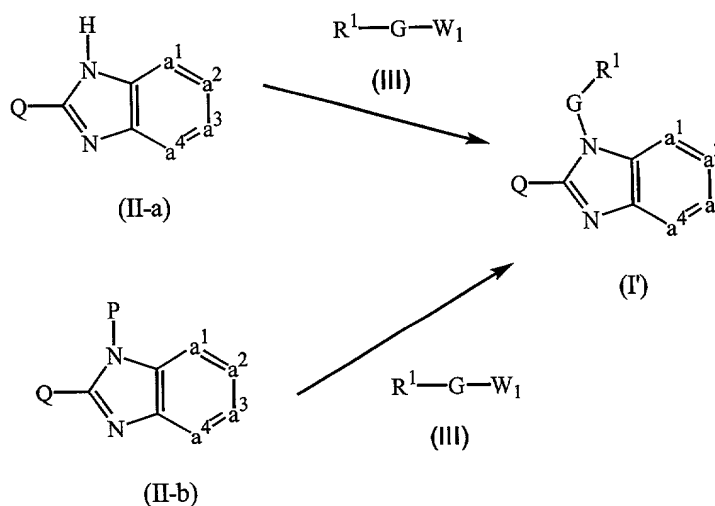
12. (amended) The method of claim 1 or 11, wherein said viral infection is a respiratory syncytial virus infection.

13. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in any one of claims 2 to 9.

14. (amended) A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 13, comprising the step of intimately mixing said carrier with said compound.

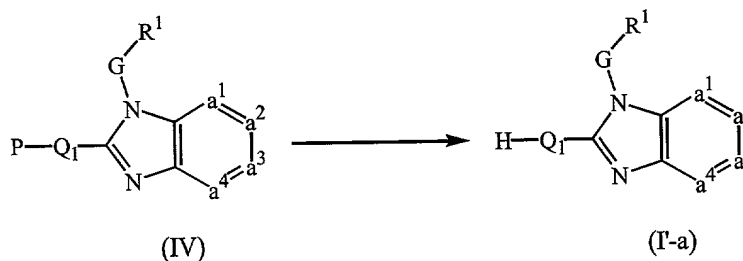
15. (amended) A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 2, comprising at least one step selected from the group consisting of:

a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula (III)



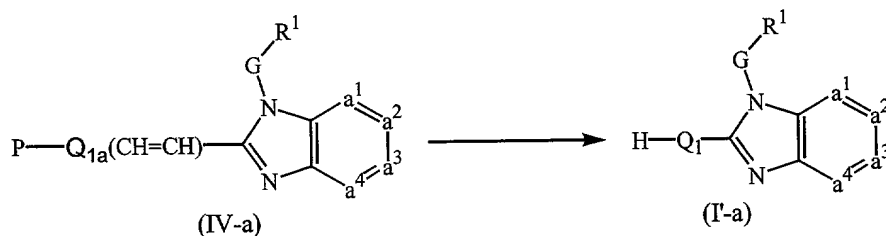
with R¹, G, Q and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and W₁ being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;

b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)



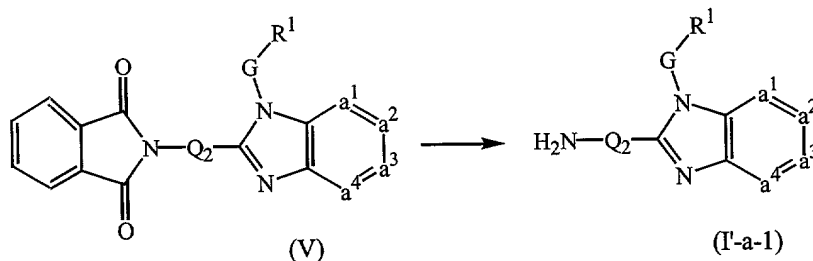
with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)



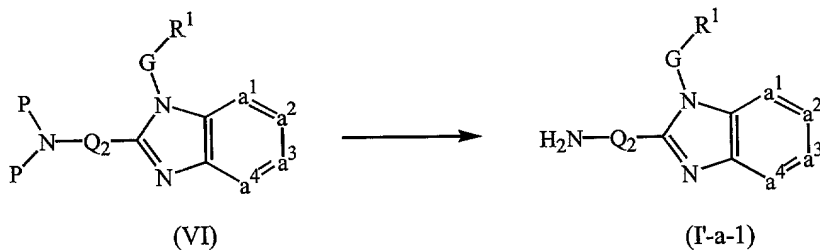
with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, Q_{1a}(CH=CH) being defined as Q₁ provided that Q₁ comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group;

d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)



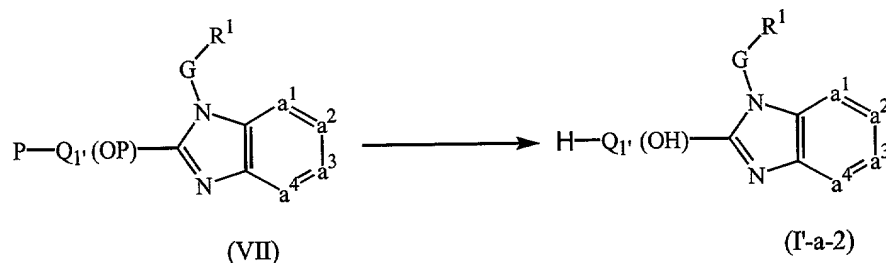
with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-Q₂ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen;

e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)

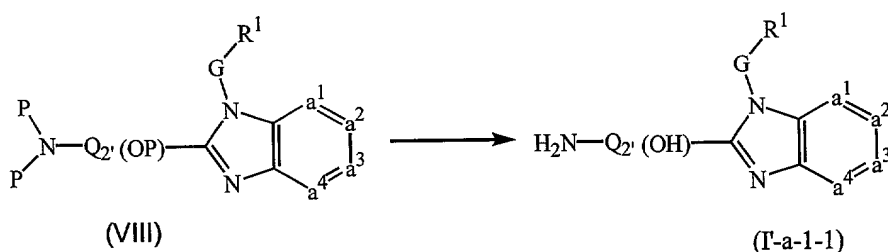


with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)



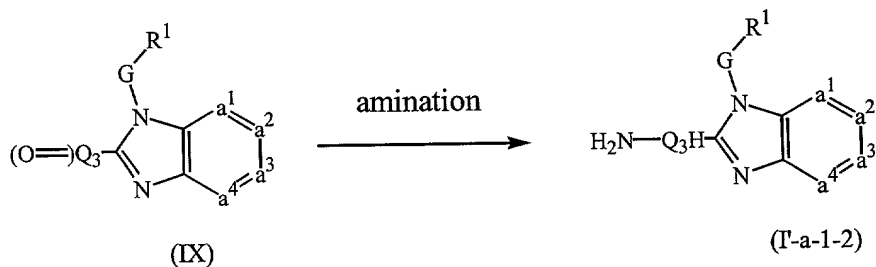
5



with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, $H-Q_1'(OH)$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, $H_2N-Q_2'(OH)$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

10

g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)

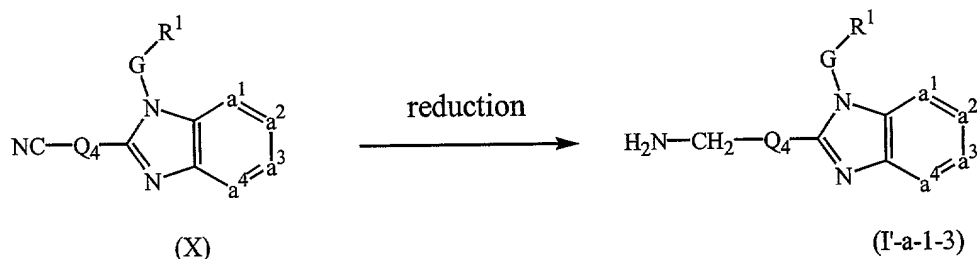


15

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_3H being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 , or R^2

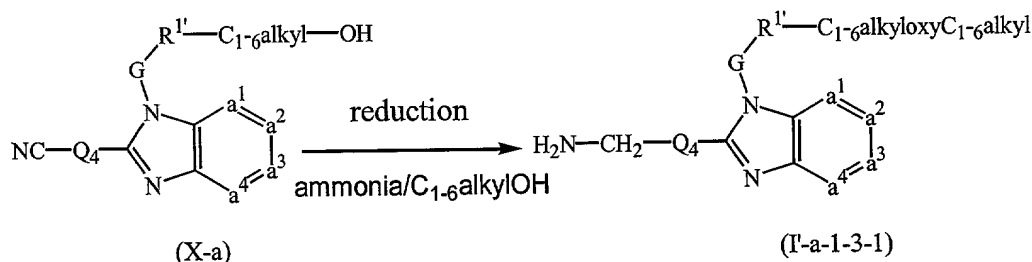
and R⁴ substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)



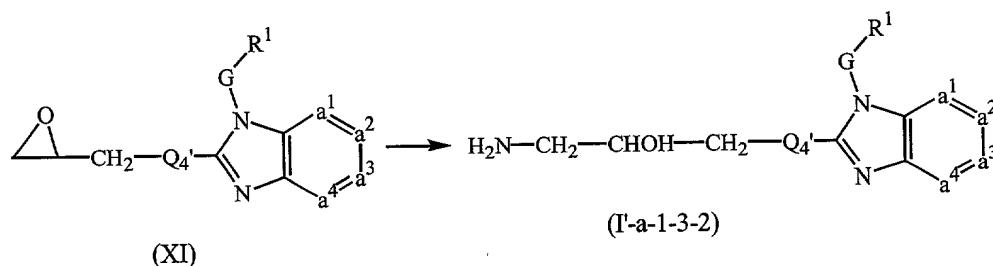
5 with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-CH₂-Q₄ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a -CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)



10 with G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, H₂N-CH₂-Q₄ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a -CH₂-NH₂ moiety, and R^{1'} being defined as R¹ according to claim 2 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

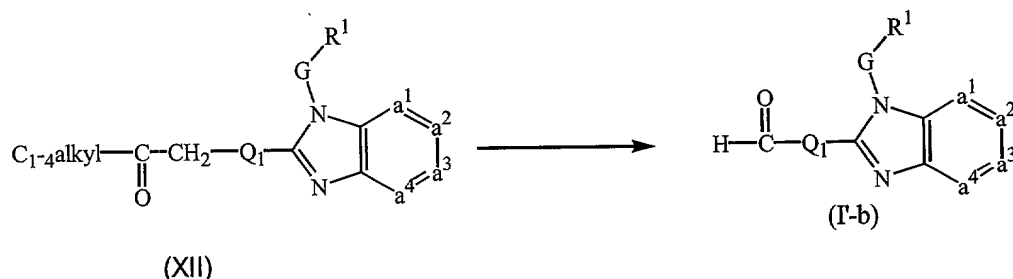
j) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)



15

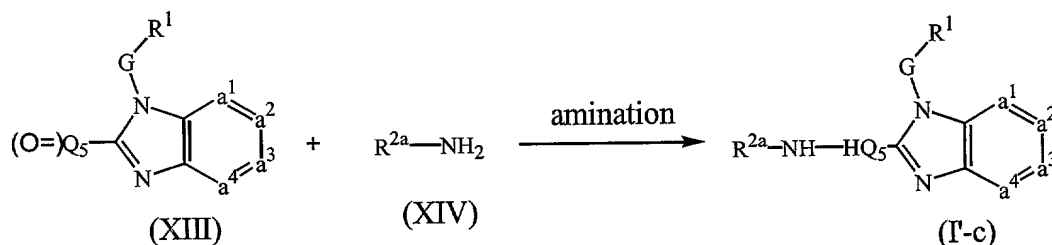
with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄' being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

- k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia



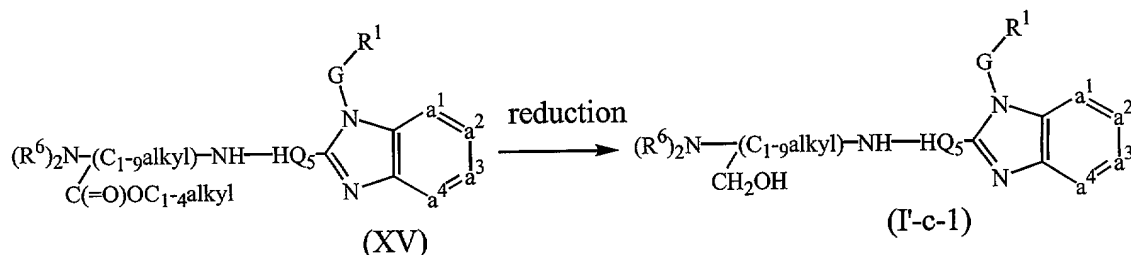
- 5 with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H-C(=O)-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is formyl;

- l) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)



- 10 with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and R²ᵃ-NH-C(=O)-Q₅ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² is other than hydrogen and is represented by R²ᵃ, R⁴ is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R² and R⁴ substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

- 15 m) reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)

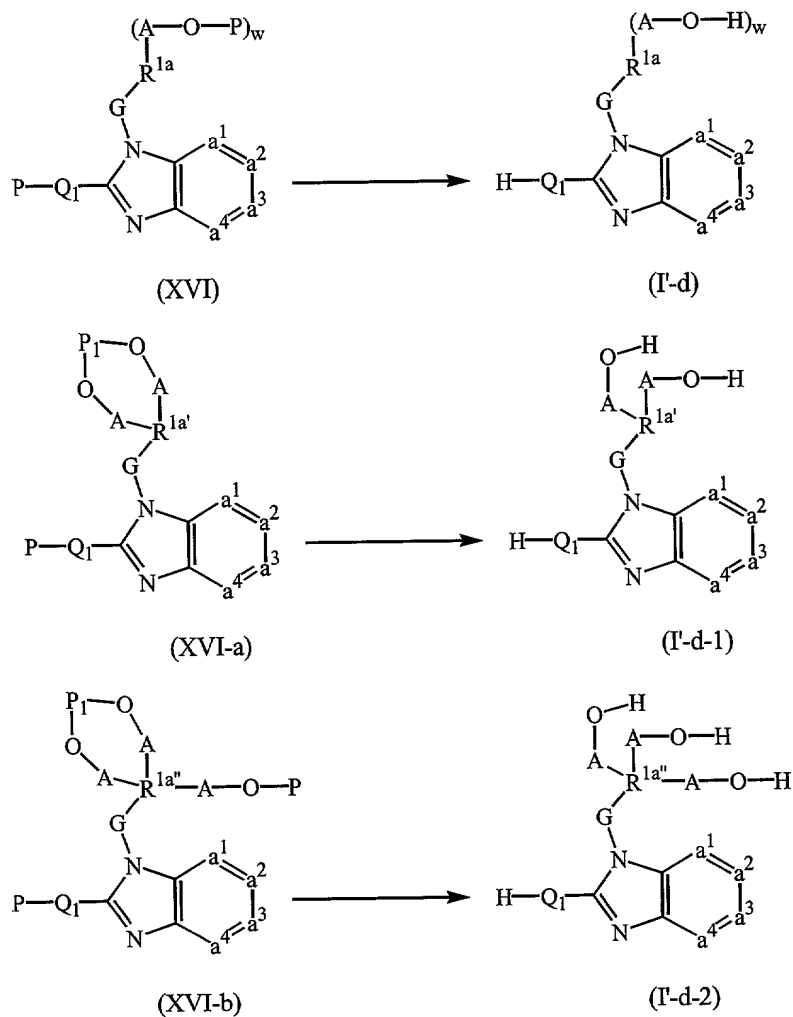


with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and

(R⁶)₂N-[(C₁-₉alkyl)CH₂OH]-NH-C(=O)OC₁-₄alkyl being defined as Q according to claim 2

provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R_6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, and provided that R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

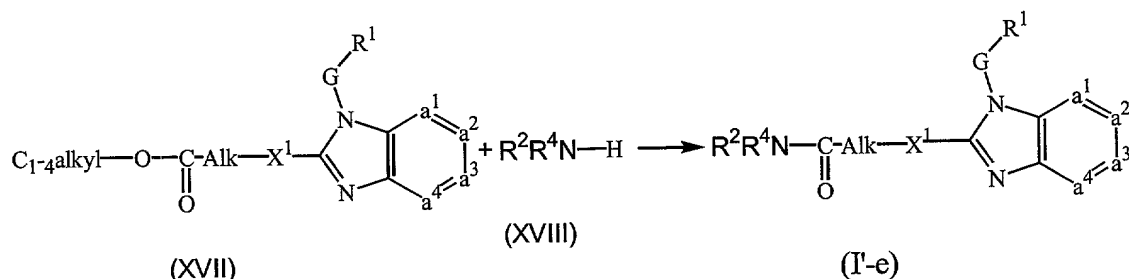
n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)



with G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and $H-Q_1$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, and $R^{1a}-(A-O-H)_w$, $R^{1a'}-(A-O-H)_2$ and $R^{1a''}-(A-O-H)_3$ being defined as R^1 according to claim 2 provided that R^1 is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or

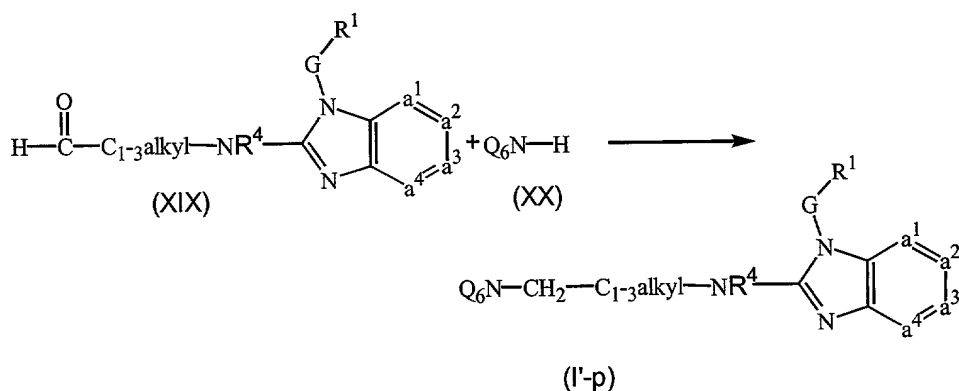
HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P₁ being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid;

o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)



with R¹, G, -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴-, Alk, X¹ R² and R⁴ defined as in claim 2, in the presence of a suitable amination agent; and

p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)



with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and Q₆N-CH₂-C₁₋₃alkyl-NR⁴ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that in the definition of Q, X² is C₂₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, in the presence of a suitable amination agent.

16. (amended) A product, comprising:

(a) a first compound as claimed in any one of claims 2 to 9; and

(b) a second antiviral compound,

wherein said first compound and said second compound are simultaneously, separately or sequentially used in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.

17. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising:

- (a) a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier; and
- (b) as active ingredients:
 - i. a first compound as claimed in any one of claims 2 to 9; and
 - ii. a second antiviral compound.

5

Please add the following new claims:

- 10 18. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid.
- 15 19. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with alkali.
- 20 20. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting the acid addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free base by treatment with alkali.
- 25 21. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting the base addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free acid by treatment with acid.

REMARKS

Applicants submit that the amendment to the claims does not introduce new matter
5 and are fully supported by the specification and claims as originally filed. Applicants
submit that the present claims meet all the requirements for patentability. The Examiner is
respectfully requested to allow all the present claims. If the Examiner is of a contrary
view, the Examiner is requested to contact the undersigned attorney at (215) 557-3861.

10 Attached hereto is a marked-up version of the changes made to the specification
and the claims by the current amendment. The attached page is captioned "Version with
Markings to Show Changes Made."

Respectfully submitted,

15 

Wendy A. Choi
Registration No. 36,697

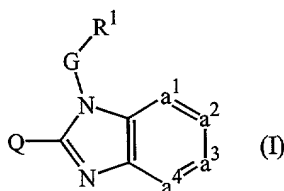
20
25 WOODCOCK WASHBURN LLP
One Liberty Place - 46th Floor
Philadelphia, PA 19103
Telephone : (215) 568-3100
Facsimile : (215) 568-3439

VERSION WITH MARKINGS TO SHOW CHANGES MADE

In the claims:

5

1. (amended) [Use of a compound for the manufacture] A method of manufacturing a
medicament for the treatment of viral infections, [wherein the compound is]
comprising the step of providing a compound of formula



10

a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof,

wherein $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ represents a bivalent radical of formula

$-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ (a-1);

$-\text{N}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ (a-2);

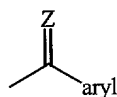
15

$-\text{CH}=\text{N}-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$ (a-3);

$-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{N}=\text{CH}-$ (a-4); or

$-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-\text{CH}=\text{N}-$ (a-5);

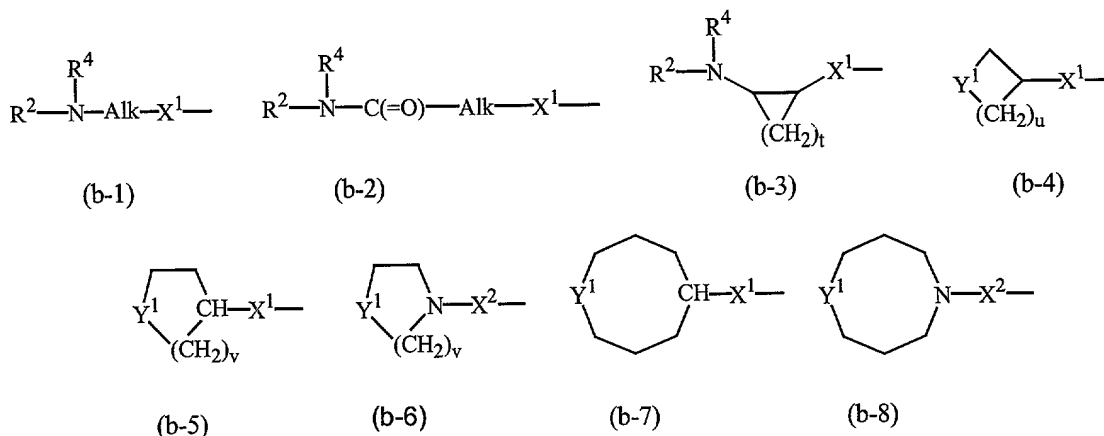
wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxyl, amino C_{1-6} alkyl, mono- or di(C_{1-4} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or a radical of formula



wherein $=\text{Z}$ is $=\text{O}$, $=\text{CH}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{NR}^{5a}\text{R}^{5b}$, $=\text{CH}_2$, $=\text{CH}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl, $=\text{N}-\text{OH}$ or $=\text{N}-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl;

25

Q is a radical of formula



wherein Alk is C_{1-6} alkanediyl;

Y^1 is a bivalent radical of formula $-NR^2-$ or $-CH(NR^2R^4)-$;

5 X^1 is NR^4 , S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, O, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$, $CH(OH)$, $CH(CH_3)$, $CH(OCH_3)$, $CH(SCH_3)$, $CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b})$, CH_2-NR^4 or NR^4-CH_2 ;

X^2 is a direct bond, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, NR^4 , C_{1-4} alkyl- NR^4 , NR^4-C_{1-4} alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

10 v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkyloxy, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

15 G is a direct bond or C_{1-10} alkanediyl;

R^1 is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidiny, piperaziny, pyridyl, pyraziny, pyridaziny, pyrimidiny, pyrroly, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylthio, C_{1-6} alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonylamino, C_{1-6} alkyl- SO_2-NR^{5c} -, aryl- SO_2-NR^{5c} -,

20

C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R² is hydrogen, formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy;

R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;

R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or

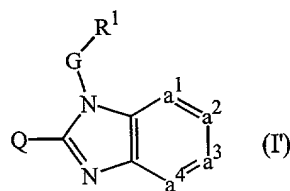
R^{5a} and R^{5b}, or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s- wherein s is 4 or 5;

R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl;

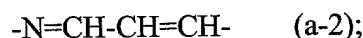
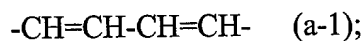
aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

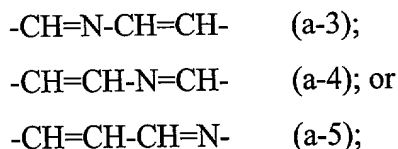
Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

2. A compound of formula (I')

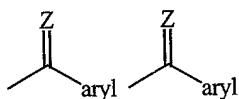


a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a radical of formula



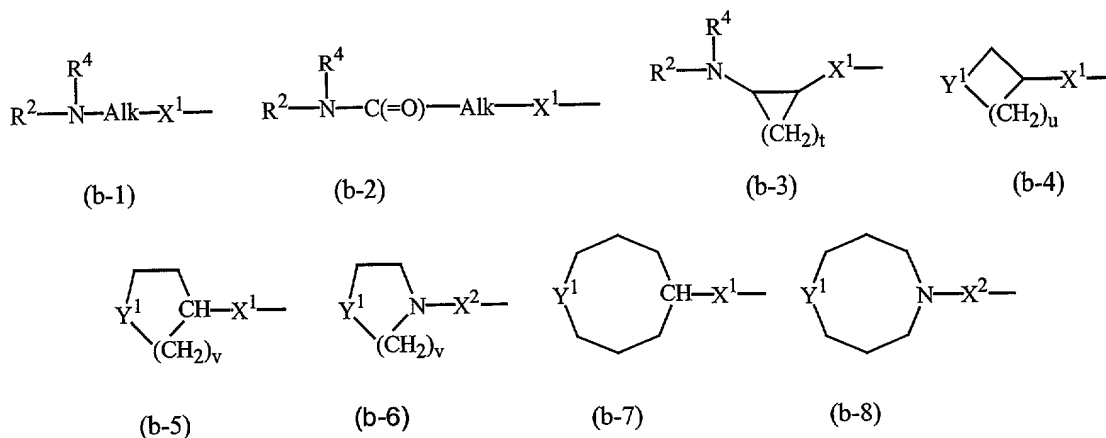


wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₄alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or a radical of formula



wherein $=\text{Z}$ is $=\text{O}$, $=\text{CH}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{NR}^{5a}\text{R}^{5b}$, $=\text{CH}_2$, $=\text{CH}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $=\text{N}-\text{OH}$ or $=\text{N}-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$;

Q is a radical of formula



wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula $-\text{NR}^2-$ or $-\text{CH}(\text{NR}^2\text{R}^4)-$;

X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced

by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkyloxy, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C_{1-10} alkanediyl;

R^1 is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, C_{1-6} alkylthio, C_{1-6} alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyl-carbonylamino, C_{1-6} alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R^2 is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{2-5} alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy;

R^4 is hydrogen, C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^{5a} , R^{5b} , R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl; or

R^{5a} and R^{5b} , or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH₂)_s- wherein s is 4 or 5;

R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, formyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl or C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, and C_{1-6} alkyloxy;

5 3. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein [the following restrictions
apply]:



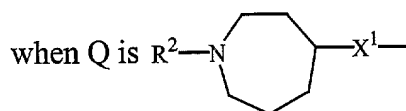
15

4. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein [the following restrictions apply]:



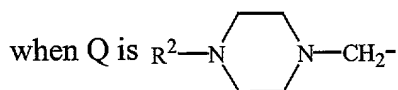
20

5. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein [the following restrictions apply]:



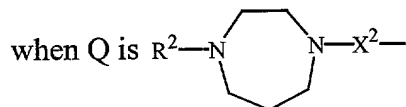
wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$ or $CH(CH_3)$, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

6. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein [the following restrictions apply]:



then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

7. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein [the following restrictions apply]:



wherein X^2 is CH_2 or a direct bond, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

8. (amended) A compound as claimed in claim 2, wherein the compound is [selected from]:

(\pm)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-3-pyridinol; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-

amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-
benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-hydroxypropyl)amino]-*1H*-
benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]-
1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine
5 tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[(2-
chloro-1,4-dimethyl-*1H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-*N*-[1-
(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-*1H*-
imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-
4-piperidiny]-6-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
10 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-*1H*-
benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-
methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-
amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-6-methyl-2-
pyridinyl]methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-
15 amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-
benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-
piperidiny]amino]-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol
tetrahydrochloride; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-7-
methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-
20 aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-
6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1); (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-
3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-
methyl-3-pyridinol; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-4-methyl-*1H*-
benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-
25 [[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-7-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-
methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-
piperidiny]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-
pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-*1H*-
benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;
30 (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidiny]amino]-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-

yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex [and] or stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

5

9. (amended) A compound [selected from] as claimed in claim 2, wherein the compound is:

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[3-[[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-amine; 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperazineethanamine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride; 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl-2-oxazolemethanol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1); ethyl 5-[[2-[[1-2-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate; 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-

30

benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-7-methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; N-[1-(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4-piperidinamine;
a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex [and] or
stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

10.(amended)A [compound as claimed in anyone of claims 2 to 9 for use as a medicine]
method of using as a medicine a compound as claimed in any one of claims 2 to 9.

11.(amended) [Use of a compound as claimed in claim 9 for the manufacture of] A method of manufacturing a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, comprising the step of providing the compound as claimed in claim 9.

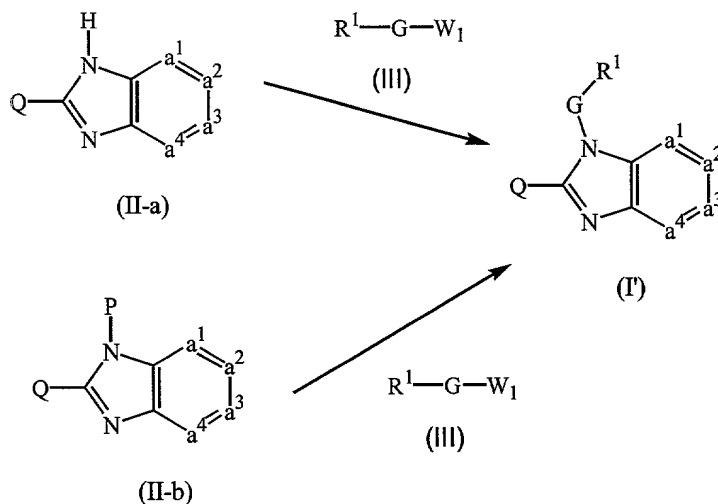
12. (amended) [Use of a compound according to claim 1 or claim 11] The method of claim 1 or 11, wherein said viral infection is a respiratory syncytial virus infection.

13. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in [claims 2 or claim 9] any one of claims 2 to 9.

14. (amended) A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 13 [characterized in that a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is intimately mixed with a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 2 or claim 9] , comprising the step of intimately mixing said carrier with said compound.

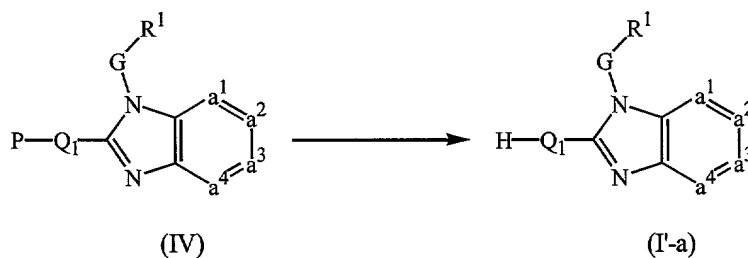
15. (amended) A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 2, [characterized by] comprising at least one step selected from the group consisting of:

(a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula (III)



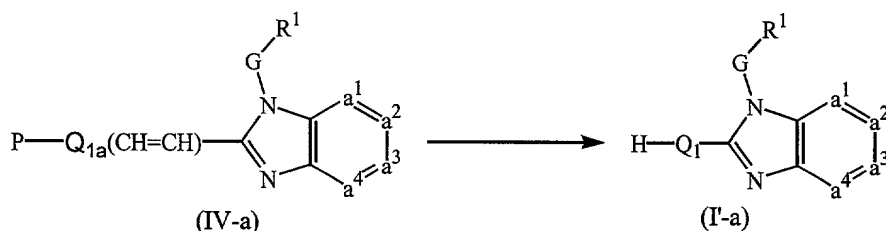
with R¹, G, Q and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and W₁ being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;

(b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)



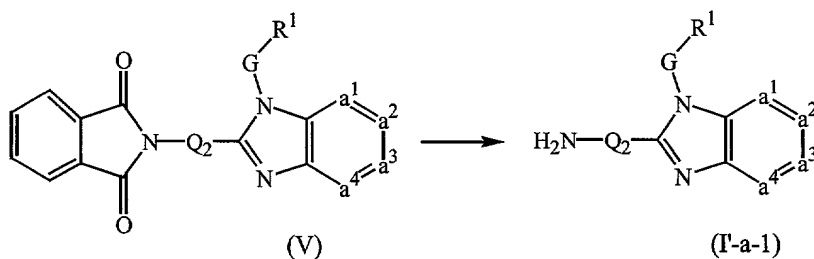
with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

(c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)



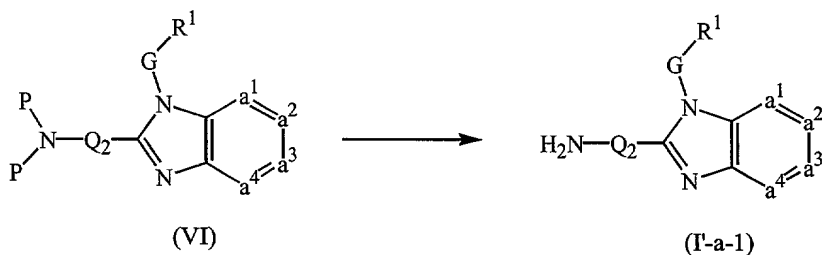
with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, $H-Q_1$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen, $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$ being defined as Q_1 provided that Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group;

(d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)



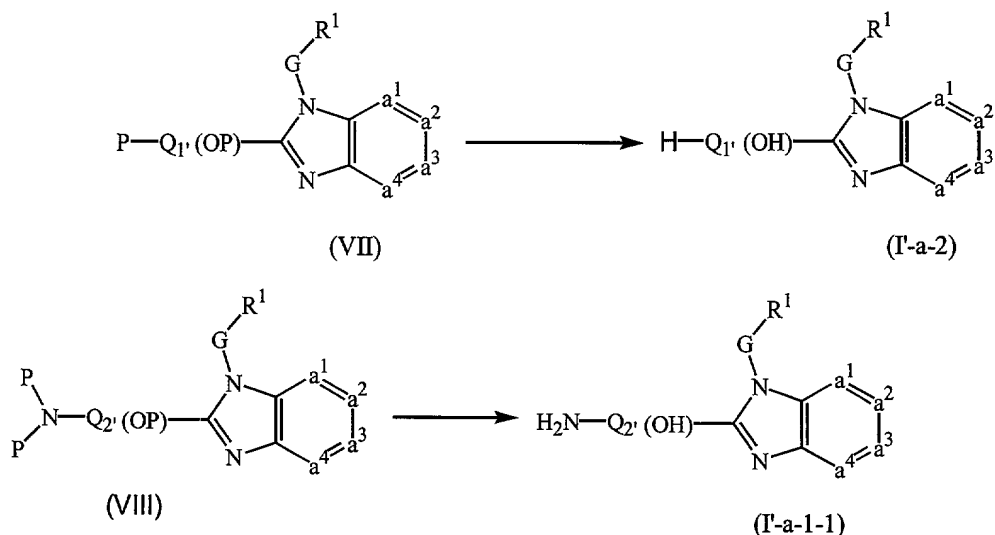
with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen;

(e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)



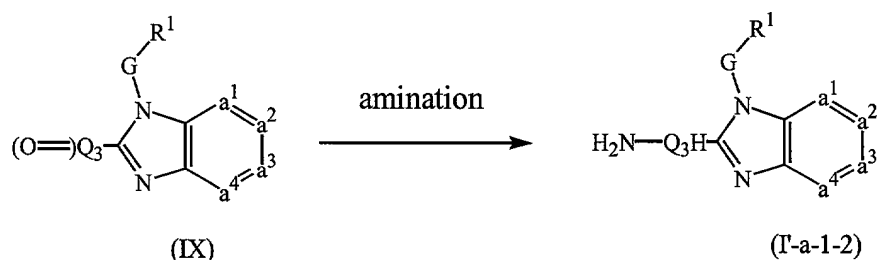
with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_2 being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

(f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)



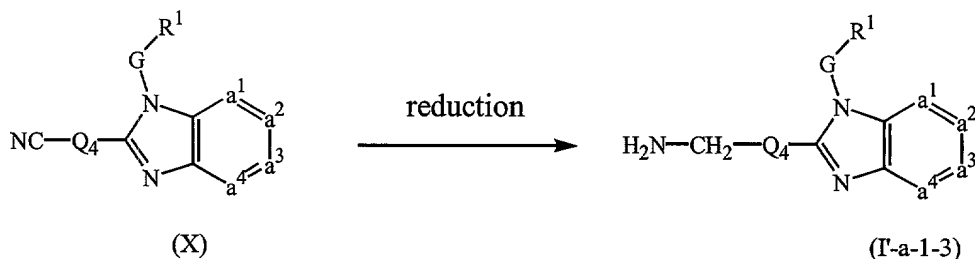
with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, $H-Q_{1'}(OH)$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, $H_2N-Q_{2'}(OH)$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

(g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)



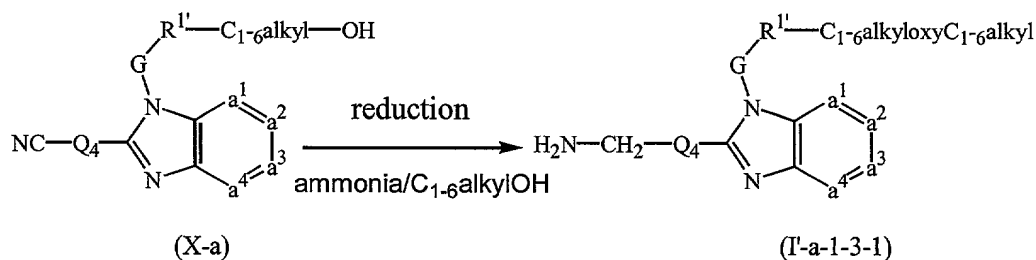
with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_3H being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 , or R^2 and R^4 substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

(h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)



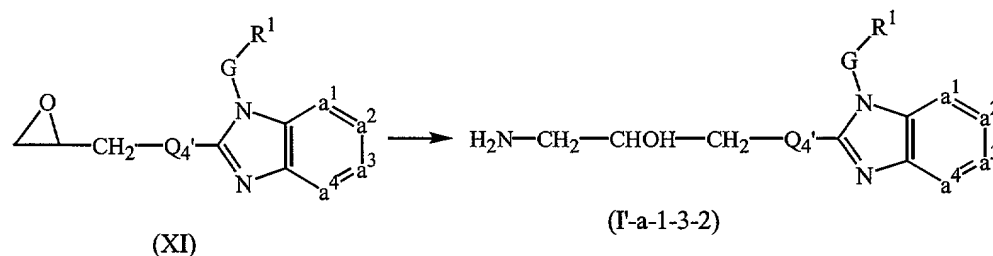
with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-CH₂-Q₄ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a -CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

(i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)



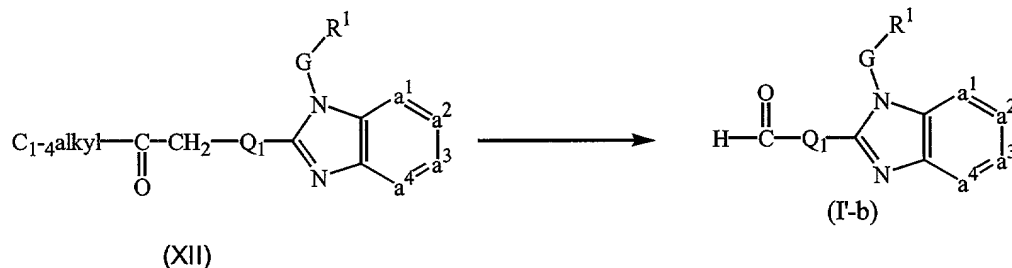
with G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, H₂N-CH₂-Q₄ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a -CH₂-NH₂ moiety, and R¹ being defined as R¹ according to claim 2 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

(j) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)



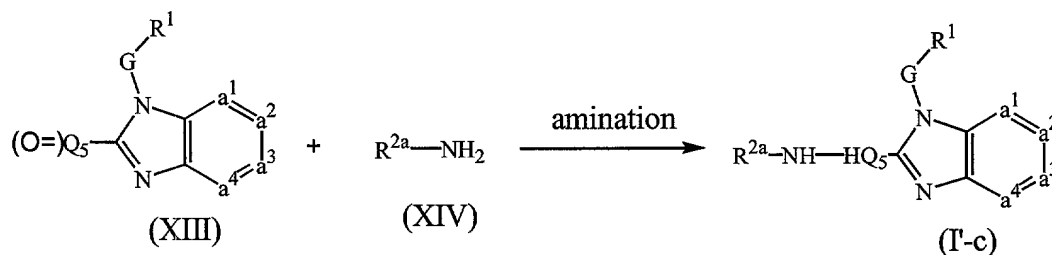
with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

(k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia



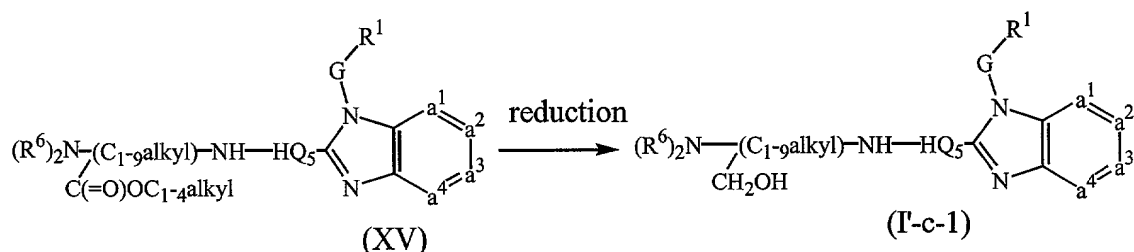
5 with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H-C(=O)-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is formyl;

(l) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)



10 with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and R^{2a}-NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² is other than hydrogen and is represented by R^{2a}, R⁴ is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R² and R⁴ substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

15 (m)reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)



with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and

(R⁶)₂N-[(C₁-₉alkyl)CH₂OH]-NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 2

provided that R² is other than hydrogen and is represented by C₁-₁₀alkyl substituted

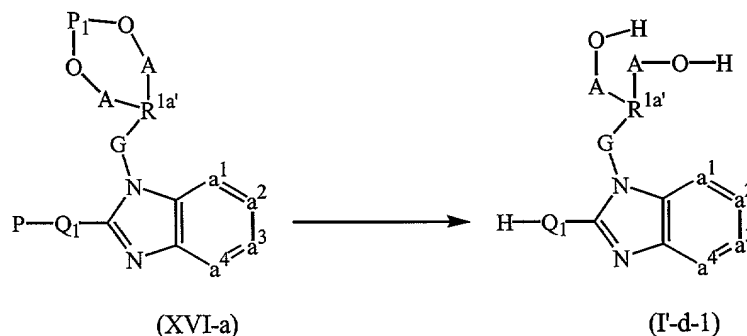
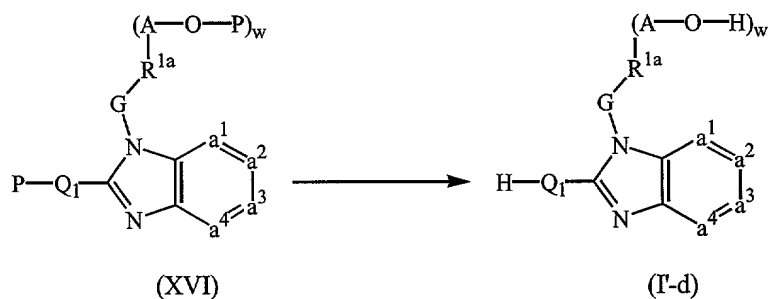
with N(R₆)₂ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries

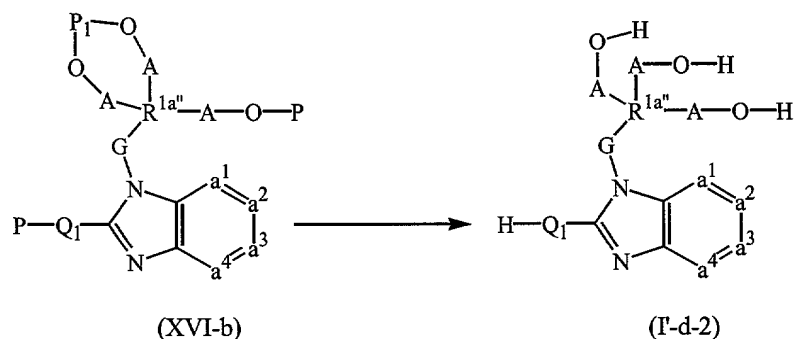
also two hydrogen atoms, and provided that R⁴ is hydrogen, and the carbon atom

adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R² and R⁴ substituents, carries also at

least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

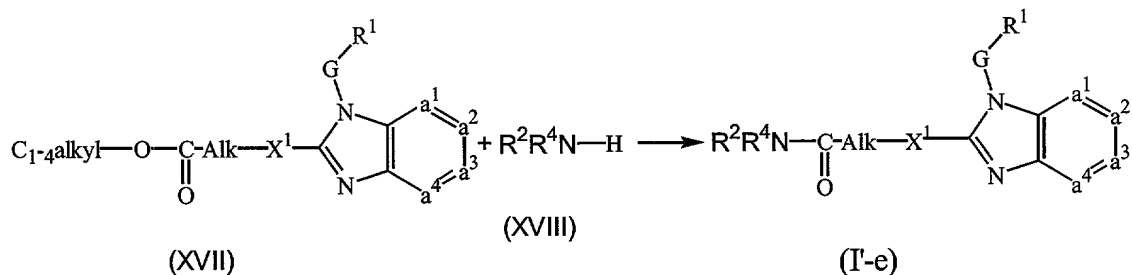
(n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)





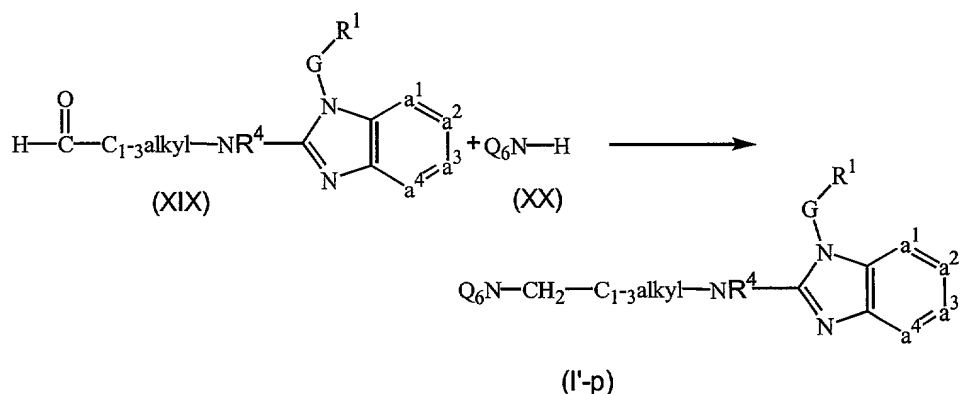
with G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, and R^{1a}-(A-O-H)_w, R^{1a'}-(A-O-H)₂ and R^{1a''}-(A-O-H)₃ being defined as R¹ according to claim 2 provided that R¹ is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P₁ being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid₂[.]

(o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)



with R¹, G, -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴-, Alk, X¹ R² and R⁴ defined as in claim 2, in the presence of a suitable amination agent; and

(p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)



with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and $Q_6N-CH_2-C_{1-3}alkyl-NR^4$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that in the definition of Q , X^2 is $C_{2-4}alkyl-NR^4$, in the presence of a suitable amination agent.

- 5 [and, if desired, converting compounds of formula (I') into each other following art-known transformations, and further, if desired, converting the compounds of formula (I'), into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid, or into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with a base, or conversely, converting the acid addition salt form into the free base by treatment with alkali, or
- 10 converting the base addition salt into the free acid by treatment with acid; and, if desired, preparing stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or N-oxide forms thereof.]

16. (amended) A product [containing], comprising:

- 15 (a) a first compound as [defined] claimed in [claim] any one of claims 2 [or] to 9; and
 (b) a second [another] antiviral compound, [as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections]

wherein said first compound and said second compound are simultaneously,
 20 separately or sequentially used in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.

17. (amended) A pharmaceutical composition, comprising:

- (a) a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier; and

(b) as active ingredients:

- i. a first compound [as defined in claim 2 or 9,] as claimed in any one of claims 2 to 9; and
- ii. [another] a second antiviral compound.

5

Please add the following new claims:

18. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes,
10 quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid.

19. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes,
15 quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with alkali.

20. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting the acid addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal
20 complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free base by treatment with alkali.

21. (new) The process of claim 15, further comprising the step of converting the base addition salt form of compound of formula (I'), stereochemically isomeric forms, metal
25 complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof, into the free acid by treatment with acid.

RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

5 The present invention is concerned with benzimidazoles and imidazopyridines having antiviral activity, in particular, they have an inhibitory activity on the replication of the respiratory syncytial virus. It further concerns their preparation and compositions comprising them, as well as their use as a medicine.

10 Human RSV or Respiratory Syncytial Virus is a large RNA virus, member of the family of Paramyxoviridae, subfamily pneumovirinae together with bovine RSV virus. Human RSV is responsible for a spectrum of respiratory tract diseases in people of all ages throughout the world. It is the major cause of lower respiratory tract illness during infancy and childhood. Over half of all infants encounter RSV in their first year of life, and almost all within their first two years. The infection in young children can cause
15 lung damage that persists for years and may contribute to chronic lung disease in later life (chronic wheezing, asthma). Older children and adults often suffer from a (bad) common cold upon RSV infection. In old age, susceptibility again increases, and RSV has been implicated in a number of outbreaks of pneumonia in the aged resulting in significant mortality.

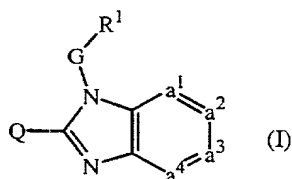
20 Infection with a virus from a given subgroup does not protect against a subsequent infection with an RSV isolate from the same subgroup in the following winter season. Re-infection with RSV is thus common, despite the existence of only two subtypes, A and B.

25 Today only three drugs have been approved for use against RSV infection. Ribavirin, a nucleoside analogue, provides an aerosol treatment for serious RSV infection in hospitalized children. The aerosol route of administration, the toxicity (risk of teratogenicity), the cost and the highly variable efficacy limit its use. The other two
30 drugs, RespiGam[®] and palivizumab, polyclonal and monoclonal antibody immunostimulants, are intended to be used in a preventive way.

Other attempts to develop a safe and effective RSV vaccine have all met with failure thus far. Inactivated vaccines failed to protect against disease, and in fact in some cases
35 enhanced disease during subsequent infection. Live attenuated vaccines have been tried with limited success. Clearly there is a need for an efficacious non-toxic and easy to administer drug against RSV replication.

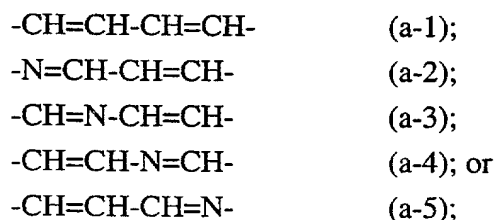
EP-A-0,005,318 , EP-A-0,099,139 , EP-A-0,145,037 , EP-A-0,144,101 ,
EP-A-0,151,826 , EP-A-0,151,824 , EP-A-0,232,937 , EP-A-0,295,742 , EP 0,297,661 ,
EP-A-0,307,014 , WO 92 01697 describe benzimidazole and imidazopyridine
substituted piperidine and piperazine derivatives as antihistaminics, antiallergics or
5 serotonin antagonists.

The present invention concerns the use of a compound for the manufacture of a
medicament for treating viral infections, wherein the compound is a compound of
formula

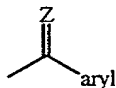


a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and
stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

-a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a bivalent radical of formula

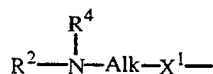


wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may
optionally be replaced by halo, C₁-₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,
C₁-₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁-₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁-₆alkyl, mono- or
di(C₁-₄alkyl)aminoC₁-₆alkyl, C₁-₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁-₆alkyl, or a
radical of formula

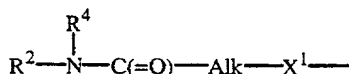


wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR⁵ᵃR⁵ᵇ, =CH₂, =CH-C₁-₆alkyl, =N-OH or
=N-O-C₁-₆alkyl;

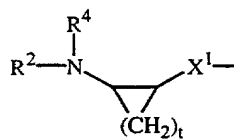
Q is a radical of formula



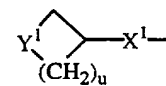
(b-1)



(b-2)

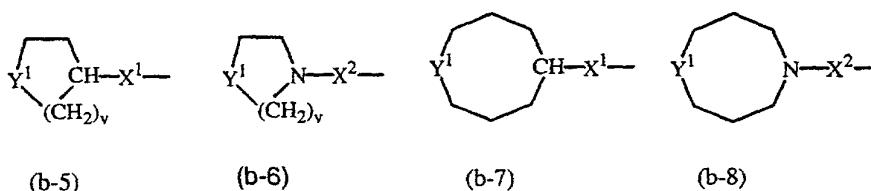


(b-3)



(b-4)

-3-



wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula -NR²- or -CH(NR²R⁴)-;

X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃),
 5 CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

- 10 whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl;

- 15 R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl,
 20 C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono- or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy carbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono- or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R² is hydrogen, formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from
 30 amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxy carbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy;

R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;

-4-

R^{5a} , R^{5b} , R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl; or R^{5a} and R^{5b} , or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula $-(CH_2)_s-$ wherein s is 4 or 5;

R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, formyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl or

5 C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy; and

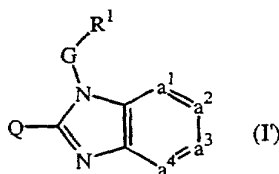
Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

10

The present invention also relates to a method of treating warm-blooded animals suffering from or susceptible to viral infections, in particular RSV infection. Said method comprises the administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, a *N*-oxide form, a pharmaceutically acceptable acid or base addition salt, a quaternary amine, a metal complex or a stereochemically isomeric form thereof in admixture with a pharmaceutical carrier.

15

A further embodiment of the present invention includes the compounds of formula (I')



20 their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms, wherein

$-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ represents a radical of formula

$-CH=CH-CH=CH-$ (a-1);

$-N=CH-CH=CH-$ (a-2);

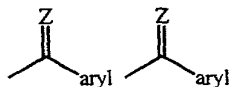
25 $-CH=N-CH=CH-$ (a-3);

$-CH=CH-N=CH-$ (a-4); or

$-CH=CH-CH=N-$ (a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,

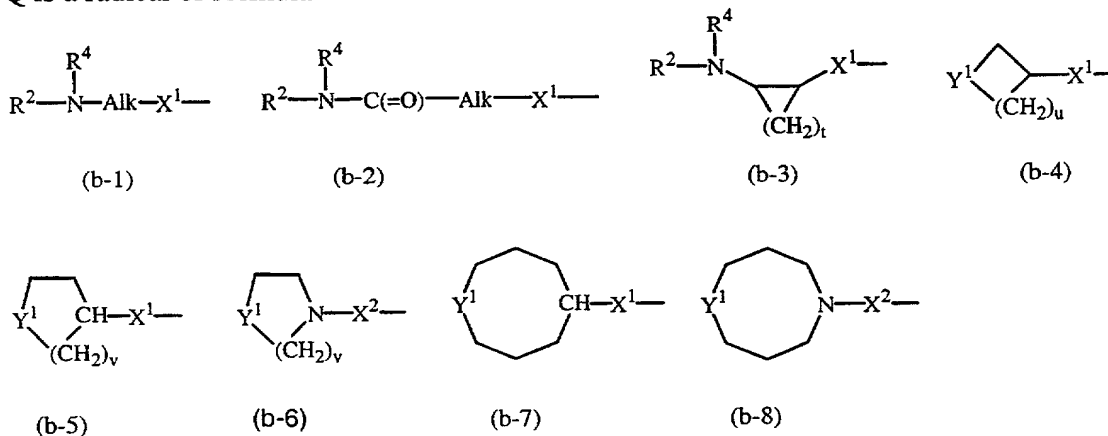
30 C_{1-6} alkyloxy, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, carboxyl, amino C_{1-6} alkyl, mono- or di(C_{1-4} alkyl)amino C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or a radical of formula



-5-

wherein $=Z$ is $=O$, $=CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}$, $=CH_2$, $=CH-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $=N-OH$ or $=N-O-C_{1-6}alkyl$;

Q is a radical of formula



wherein Alk is $C_{1-6}alkanediyl$;

Y^1 is a bivalent radical of formula $-NR^2-$ or $-CH(NR^2R^4)-$;

X^1 is NR^4 , S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, O, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$, $CH(OH)$, $CH(CH_3)$, $CH(OCH_3)$, $CH(SCH_3)$, $CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b})$, CH_2-NR^4 or NR^4-CH_2 ;

X^2 is a direct bond, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, NR^4 , $C_{1-4}alkyl-NR^4$, $NR^4-C_{1-4}alkyl$;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

- 15 whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or $C_{1-6}alkyloxy$, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or $C_{1-10}alkanediyl$;

- 20 R^1 is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxy$, $C_{1-6}alkylthio$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxyC_{1-6}alkyl$, aryl, aryl $C_{1-6}alkyl$, aryl $C_{1-6}alkyloxy$, hydroxy $C_{1-6}alkyl$, mono-or di($C_{1-6}alkyl$)amino, mono-or di($C_{1-6}alkyl$)amino $C_{1-6}alkyl$, polyhalo $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkyl$ -carbonylamino, $C_{1-6}alkyl-SO_2-NR^{5c}$, aryl- SO_2-NR^{5c} , $C_{1-6}alkyloxycarbonyl$, $-C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}$, $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$, halo($-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$, aryl $C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ and mono-or di($C_{1-6}alkyl$)amino($-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$;
- 25 each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

-6-

R^2 is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, or C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_2 -alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono- or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyloxy, aryl C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyloxy;

R^4 is hydrogen, C_{1-6} alkyl or aryl C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^{5a} , R^{5b} , R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C_{1-6} alkyl; or

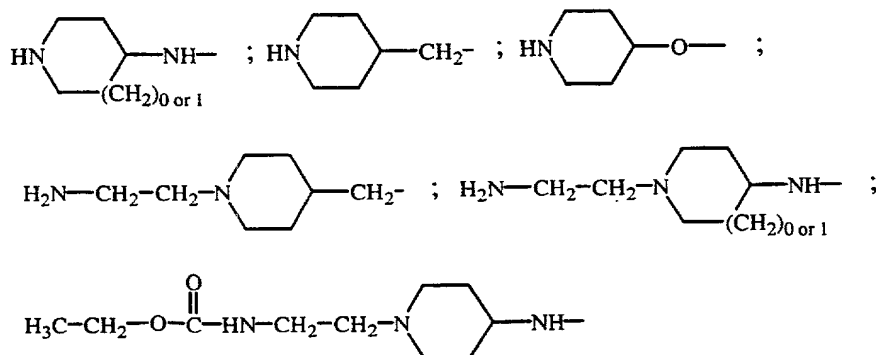
R^{5a} and R^{5b} , or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula $-(CH_2)_s-$

wherein s is 4 or 5;

R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-6} alkyl, formyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl or C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, and C_{1-6} alkyloxy;

provided that when G is methylene, and R^1 is 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 6-methyl-2-pyridyl, 2-pyrazinyl or 5-methyl-imidazol-4-yl, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ is $-CH=CH-CH=CH-$ or $-N=CH-CH=CH-$, then Q is other than



Yet another embodiment of the present invention includes the following group of compounds

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate;

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;

4-[[3-[[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineetanamine;

- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate;
- 5 N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine;
- 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)methyl]-1-
- 10 piperazineethanamine;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride;
- 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-2-
- 15 oxazolemethanol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
- 4-[[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-
- piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1);
- 20 ethyl 5-[[2-[[1-[2-[[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]amino]-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate;
- 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-
- piperidineethanamine;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-
- 25 2-amine;
- ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-7-methyl-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate;
- 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate;
- 30 ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; and
- N-[1-(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4-piperidinamine.
- the prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and
- 35 stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.
- Said group of compounds will be referred to hereinafter as the compounds of group (I').

The term prodrug as used throughout this text means the pharmacologically acceptable derivatives, e.g. esters and amides, such that the resulting biotransformation product of the derivative is the active drug as defined in the compounds of formula (I). The reference by Goodman and Gilman (The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics, 8th ed., McGraw-Hill, Int. Ed. 1992, "Biotransformation of Drugs", p. 13-15) describing prodrugs generally, is hereby incorporated.

As used herein C₁₋₃alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 3 carbon atoms such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, 1-methylethyl and the like; C₁₋₄alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as the group defined for C₁₋₃alkyl and butyl and the like; C₂₋₄alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 4 carbon atoms such as ethyl, propyl, 1-methylethyl, butyl and the like; C₁₋₆alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₄alkyl and pentyl, hexyl, 2-methylbutyl and the like; C₁₋₉alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 9 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₆alkyl and heptyl, octyl, nonyl, 2-methylhexyl, 2-methylheptyl and the like; C₁₋₁₀alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C₁₋₉alkyl and decyl, 2-methylnonyl and the like. C₃₋₇cycloalkyl is generic to cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl; C₂₋₅alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 5 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,2-ethanediyl, 1,3-propanediyl, 1,4-butanediyl, 1,2-propanediyl, 2,3-butanediyl, 1,5-pentanediyl and the like, C₂₋₅alkanediyl is substituted on C₁₋₁₀alkyl as provided for in the definition of R², it is meant to be substituted on one carbon atom thus forming a spiro moiety; C₁₋₄alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as, for example, methylene, 1,2-ethanediyl, 1,3-propanediyl, 1,4-butanediyl and the like; C₁₋₆alkanediyl is meant to include C₁₋₄alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 5 to 6 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,5-pentanediyl, 1,6-hexanediyl and the like; C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl is meant to include C₁₋₆alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 7 to 10 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,7-heptanediyl, 1,8-octanediyl, 1,9-nonanediyl, 1,10-decanediyl and the like.

As used herein before, the term (=O) forms a carbonyl moiety when attached to a carbon atom, a sulfoxide moiety when attached to a sulfur atom and a sulfonyl moiety when two of said terms are attached to a sulfur atom. The term (=N-OH) forms a hydroxylimine moiety when attached to a carbon atom.

The term halo is generic to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo. As used in the foregoing and hereinafter, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl as a group or part of a group is defined as mono- or polyhalosubstituted C₁₋₆alkyl, in particular methyl with one or more fluoro atoms, for example, difluoromethyl or trifluoromethyl. In case more than one halogen atoms are attached to an alkyl group within the definition of polyhaloC₁₋₄alkyl, they may be the same or different.

When any variable (e.g. aryl, R², R³, R⁴, R^{5a}, R^{5b} etc.) occurs more than one time in any constituent, each definition is independent.

It will be appreciated that some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms may contain one or more centers of chirality and exist as stereochemically isomeric forms.

The term "stereochemically isomeric forms" as used hereinbefore defines all the possible stereoisomeric forms which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I''), and their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes or physiologically functional derivatives may possess. Unless otherwise mentioned or indicated, the chemical designation of compounds denotes the mixture of all possible stereochemically isomeric forms, said mixtures containing all diastereomers and enantiomers of the basic molecular structure as well as each of the individual isomeric forms of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, salts, solvates, quaternary amines, metal complexes substantially free, *i.e.* associated with less than 10%, preferably less than 5%, in particular less than 2% and most preferably less than 1% of the other isomers. Stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are obviously intended to be embraced within the scope of this invention.

As used hereinafter the terms trans, cis, R or S are well-known by the person skilled in the art.

For some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I''), their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, salts, solvates, quaternary amines or metal complexes and the intermediates used in the preparation thereof, the absolute stereochemical configuration was not experimentally determined. In these cases the stereoisomeric form which was first isolated is designated as "A" and the second as "B", without further reference to the actual stereochemical configuration. However, said "A" and "B" stereoisomeric forms can be unambiguously characterized by for instance their optical rotation in case "A" and "B" have an enantiomeric relationship. A person skilled in the art is able to determine the absolute configuration of such compounds using art-known methods such as, for example, X-ray diffraction. In case "A" and "B" are stereoisomeric mixtures, they can be further separated whereby the respective first fractions isolated are designated "A1" and "B1" and the second as "A2" and "B2", without further reference to the actual stereochemical configuration.

For therapeutic use, salts of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are those wherein the counterion is pharmaceutically acceptable. However, salts of acids and bases which are non-pharmaceutically acceptable may also find use, for example, in the preparation or purification of a pharmaceutically acceptable compound. All salts, whether pharmaceutically acceptable or not are included within the ambit of the present invention.

The pharmaceutically acceptable acid and base addition salts as mentioned hereinabove are meant to comprise the therapeutically active non-toxic acid and base addition salt forms which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are able to form. The pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts can conveniently be obtained by treating the base form with such appropriate acid. Appropriate acids comprise, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrohalic acids, e.g. hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid, sulfuric, nitric, phosphoric and the like acids; or organic acids such as, for example, acetic, propanoic, hydroxyacetic, lactic, pyruvic, oxalic (i.e. ethanedioic), malonic, succinic (i.e. butanedioic acid), maleic, fumaric, malic (i.e. hydroxybutanedioic acid), tartaric, citric, methanesulfonic, ethanesulfonic, benzenesulfonic, *p*-toluenesulfonic, cyclamic, salicylic, *p*-aminosalicylic, pamoic and the like acids.

Conversely said salt forms can be converted by treatment with an appropriate base into the free base form.

The compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') containing an acidic proton may also be converted into their non-toxic metal or amine addition salt forms by treatment with appropriate organic and inorganic bases. Appropriate base salt forms comprise, for example, the ammonium salts, the alkali and earth alkaline metal salts, e.g. the lithium, sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium salts and the like, salts with organic bases, e.g. the benzathine, *N*-methyl-D-glucamine, hydrabamine salts, and salts with amino acids such as, for example, arginine, lysine and the like.

The term addition salt as used hereinabove also comprises the solvates which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') as well as the salts thereof, are able to form. Such solvates are for example hydrates, alcoholates and the like.

The term "quaternary amine" as used hereinbefore defines the quaternary ammonium salts which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are able to form by reaction between a basic nitrogen of a compound of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and an appropriate quaternizing agent, such as, for example, an optionally substituted alkylhalide, arylhalide or arylalkylhalide, e.g. methyl iodide or benzyl iodide. Other reactants with good leaving groups may also be used, such as alkyl trifluoromethanesulfonates, alkyl methanesulfonates, and alkyl *p*-toluenesulfonates. A quaternary amine has a positively charged nitrogen. Pharmaceutically acceptable counterions include chloro, bromo, iodo, trifluoroacetate and acetate. The counterion of choice can be introduced using ion exchange resins.

It will be appreciated that the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may have metal binding, chelating, complexing properties and therefore may exist as metal complexes or metal chelates. Such metalated derivatives of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

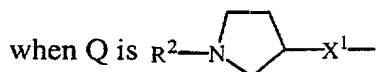
Some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may also exist in their tautomeric form. Such forms although not explicitly indicated in the above formula are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

A special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I) or (I') wherein one or more of the following restrictions apply:

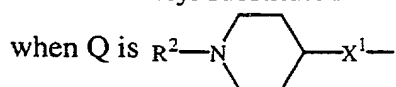
- Q is a radical of formula (b-1), (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) or (b-8);
- X² is a direct bond, CH₂ or C(=O);

- R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio,
- 5 C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n;
- 10 - R² is hydrogen, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with NHR⁶, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with NHR⁶ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
- R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;
- 15 - R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl.

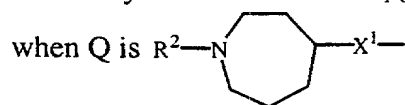
A special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I') wherein the following restrictions apply :



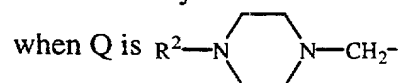
- 20 wherein X¹ is NR⁴, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂) or CH(CH₃), then R¹ is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl;



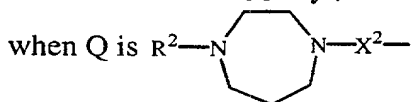
- 25 wherein X¹ is NR⁴, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂) or CH(CH₃), then R¹ is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyridyl substituted with 1 or 2 C₁₋₆alkyloxy, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl;



- 30 wherein X¹ is NR⁴, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂) or CH(CH₃), then R¹ is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl;



then R¹ is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl;



- wherein X² is CH₂ or a direct bond, then R¹ is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C₁₋₆alkyl.

Or a special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I') wherein one of the following applies :

- Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-5); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-4) wherein u is 1,3,4 or 5; or (b-4) wherein u is 2, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X¹ is CH(OH), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂, and wherein R¹ is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-,

C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or

- Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-5) wherein v is 3; or (b-5) wherein v is 2, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X¹ is CH(OH), CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂, and wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy carbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles being substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyridyl being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy carbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or pyridyl being substituted with, 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl groups or 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyloxy groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrazinyl being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy carbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy carbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-

O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-;
or

- Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-5) wherein v is
 5 2; or (b-5) wherein v is 3, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X¹ is CH(OH),
 CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂, and wherein R¹ is pyridyl
 or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible
 more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano,
 carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆
 10 alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆
 alky)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-,
 aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-
 CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and
 mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles being
 15 substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrimidinyl
 or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more,
 such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy,
 C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆
 20 alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆
 alky)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-,
 aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-
 CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and
 mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl,
 each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more,
 25 such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy,
 C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆
 alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆
 alky)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-,
 aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-
 30 CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and
 mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or

- Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-5); (b-7); (b-8); (b-6) wherein v is
 3; or (b-6) wherein v is 2, wherein Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X² is a direct bond or
 35 C(=O), or X² is a direct bond, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl, wherein R¹ is
 pyridyl, pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or
 where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino,

cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-,

5 halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is imidazolyl being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or

10 di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or imidazolyl being substituted with 2 or 3 C₁₋₆alkyl groups; or wherein R¹ is pyridazinyl,

15 pyrrolyl, or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-,

20 halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-5); (b-7); (b-8); (b-6) wherein v is

25 2; or (b-6) wherein v is 3, Y¹ is -CH(NR²R⁴)-, wherein X² is C(=O) or X² is C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl, and wherein R¹ is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl,

30 mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, or each of said heterocycles being substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C₁₋₆alkyl

35 groups; or wherein R¹ is pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio,

- C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-,
- 5 arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-; or wherein R¹ is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio,
- 10 C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-.
- 15 Preferred compounds are
- (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;
- 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-3-pyridinol;
- 20 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate;
- (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- (±)-2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-hydroxypropyl)amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-
- 25 3-pyridinol;
- N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate;
- (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- 30 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- (±)-*N*-[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1*H*-
- 35 benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;
- (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate;
 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[3-amino-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;

- 5 the prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.

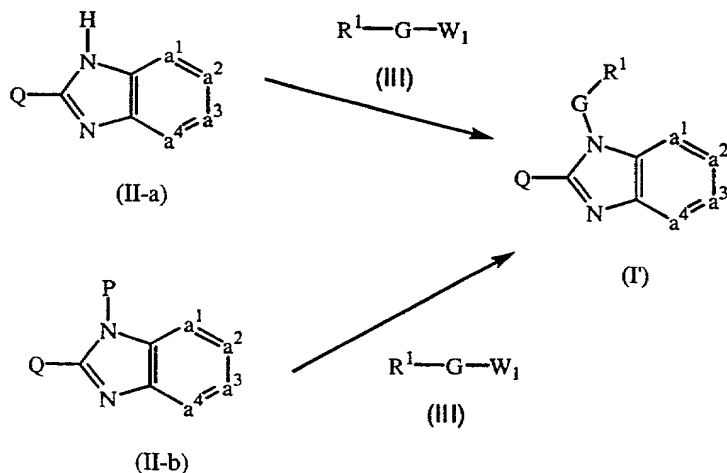
Most preferred are

- 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride;
 10 (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol;
 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1);
 15 (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol;
 (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;
 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate;
 20 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride;
 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;
 25 (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; and
 (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)-methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine.

- 30 the prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.

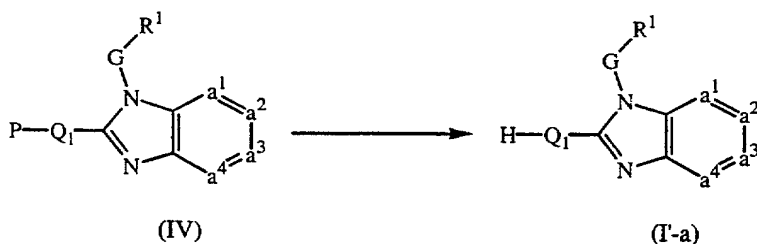
- In general, compounds of formula (I') can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b), wherein P represents a protecting group, such as, for example C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of 'Protective
 35 Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991), with an intermediate of formula (III), wherein W₁ is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, bromo, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, e.g.

sodium hydride, disodium carbonate. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide.



Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H-Q₁, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein P represents a protecting group, for example C₁-

alkyloxycarbonyl, benzyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of 'Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991).



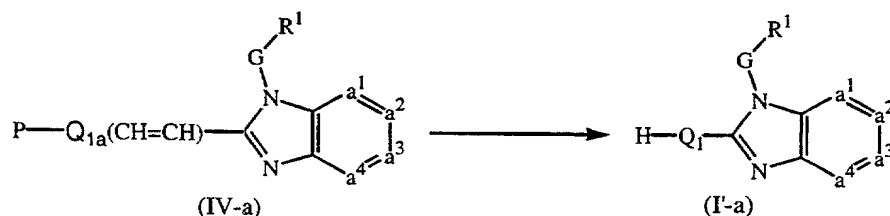
When P represents, for example, C₁₋₄alkyloxycarbonyl, said deprotection reaction can be performed by, for example, acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to heat the reaction mixture, in particular up to the reflux temperature.

Alternatively, when P represents, for example, benzyl, the deprotection reaction can be performed by catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of hydrogen and an appropriate catalyst in a reaction-inert solvent. A suitable catalyst in the above reaction is, for

example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, and the like. An appropriate reaction-inert solvent for said reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, an ester, e.g. ethylacetate and the like, an acid, e.g. acetic acid and the like.

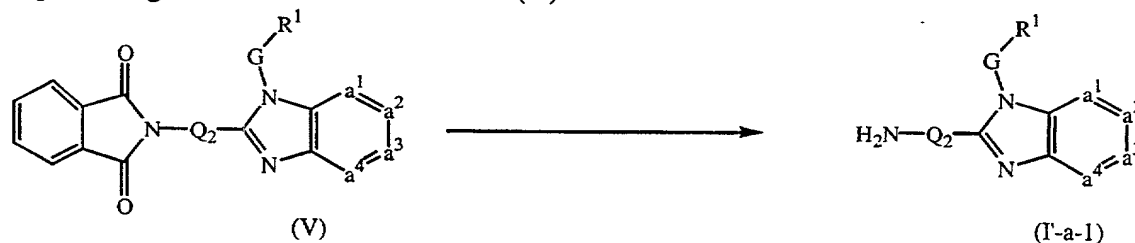
5

The catalytic hydrogenation reaction described above can also be used to prepare a compound of formula (I'-a) by deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, said Q_1 being represented by $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$, and said intermediate being represented by formula (IV-a).



10

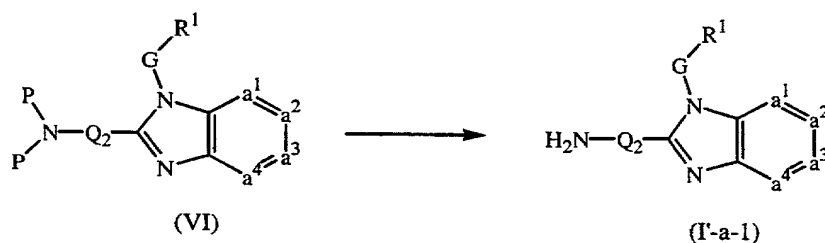
Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, said Q being represented by H_2N-Q_2 , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1), can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V).



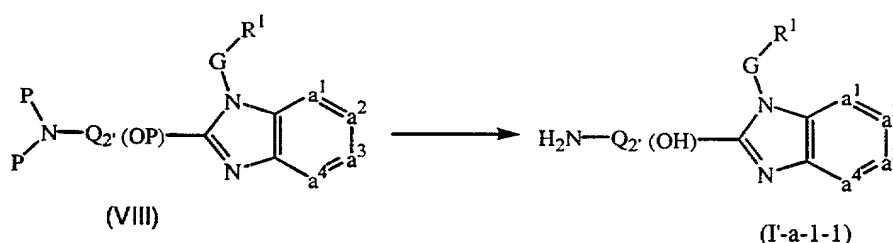
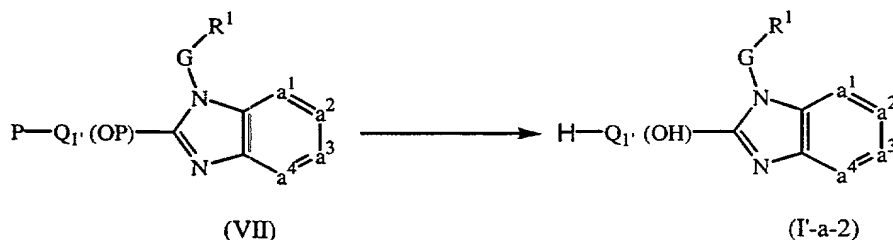
15

Said deprotection reaction can be performed in the presence of a suitable base such as, for example hydrazine, or in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol, acetic acid and the like.

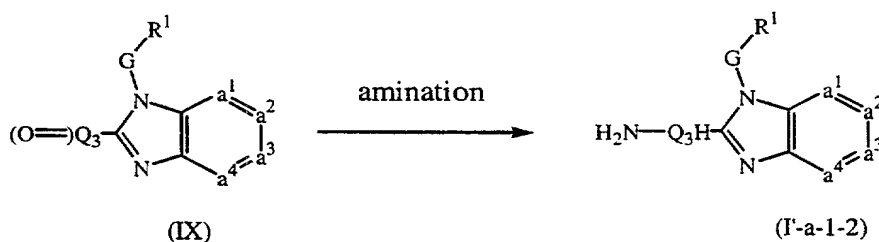
20 Compounds of formula (I'-a-1) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI) according to the procedure described for the preparation of compounds of formula (I'-a).



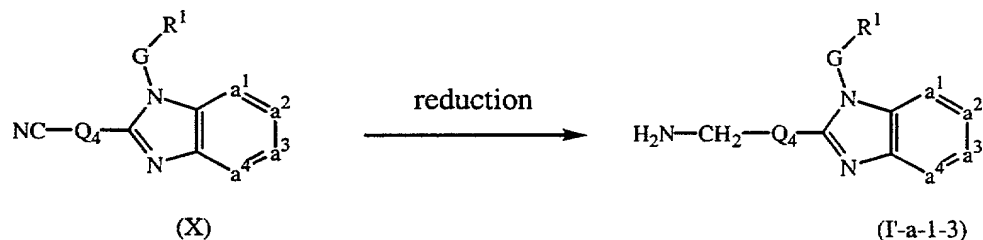
- Compounds of formula (I'-a) or (I'-a-1), wherein Q_1 or Q_2 comprise a hydroxy substituent, said Q_1 or Q_2 being represented by $Q_1'(\text{OH})$ or $Q_2'(\text{OH})$, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-2) or (I'-a-1-1), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII) as described hereinabove for the
- 5 preparation of compounds of formula (I'-a).



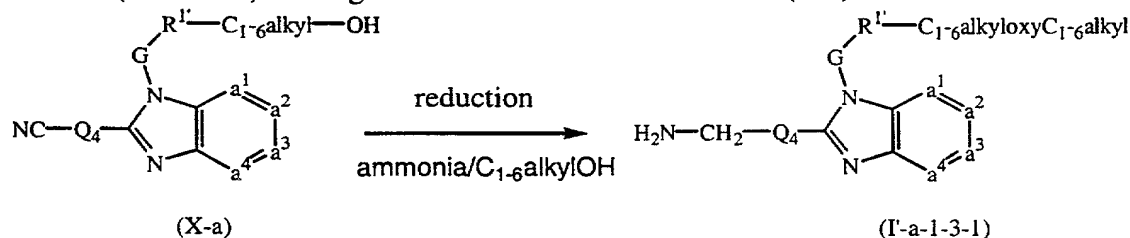
- Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q , both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 or R^2 and R^4 substituents, contains at least one hydrogen, said Q being represented by H_2N-Q_3H , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-2) can also be obtained by reductive amination of intermediates of formula (IX) in the presence of a suitable amination reagent, such as, for example, ammonia, hydroxylamine, or benzylamine, and in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst. An appropriate catalyst in the above reaction is, for example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, rhodium-on- Al_2O_3 , and the like, optionally in the presence of a catalyst poison, such as a thiophene solution. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.
- 10
- 15



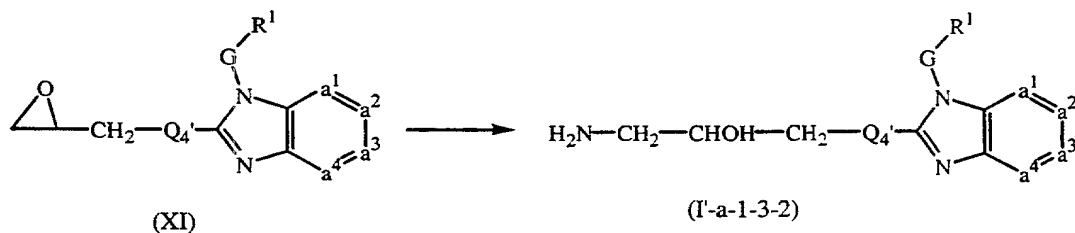
Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q comprises a $-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ moiety, said Q being represented by $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{CH}_2-\text{Q}_4$, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (X).



- 5 Said reduction can be performed with a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride or hydrogen, optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as Raney Nickel. A suitable solvent for the above reaction is, for example, tetrahydrofuran, or a solution of ammonia in an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like. Said reduction reaction performed in a solution of ammonia in an alcohol can also be used to prepare compounds of formula (I'-a-1-3), wherein R^1 is substituted with C_{1-6} alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, said R^1 being represented by $\text{R}^{1'}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyloxy C_{1-6} alkyl, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3-1) starting from an intermediate of formula (X-a).

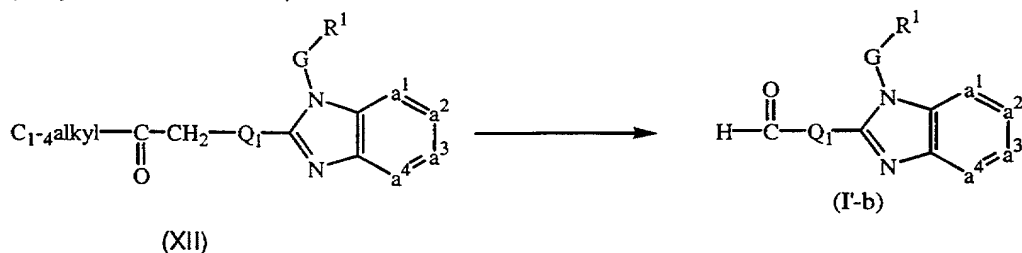


- 15 Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q comprises a $-\text{CH}_2-\text{CHOH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2$ moiety, said Q being represented by $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CHOH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{Q}_4$, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3-2), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XI) with ammonia in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol.

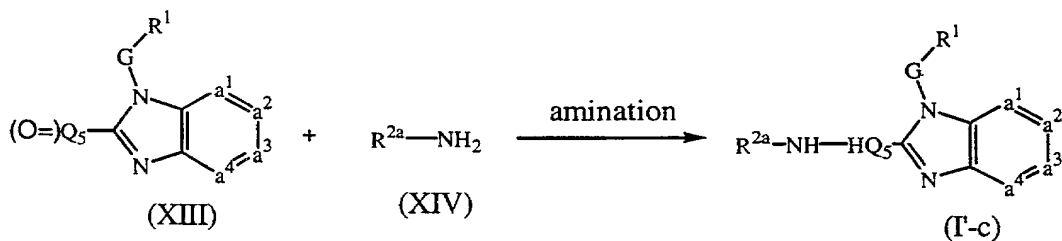


Compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R^2 or one R^6 substituent is formyl, said Q being represented by $\text{H}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{Q}_1$, and said compounds being

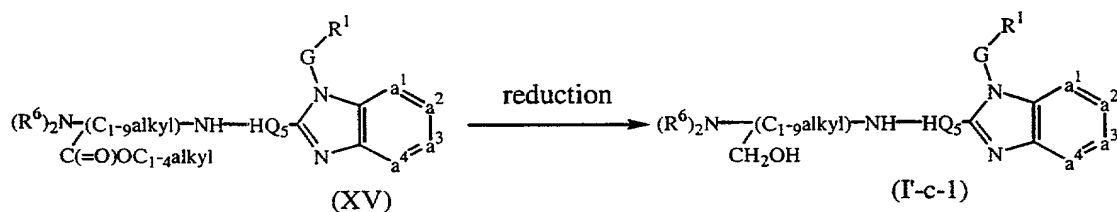
represented by formula (I'-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia.



- Compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R² is other than hydrogen, said R² being represented by R^{2a}, R⁴ is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R² and R⁴ substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said Q being represented by R^{2a}-NH-HQ₅, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-c), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) with an intermediate of formula (XIV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.



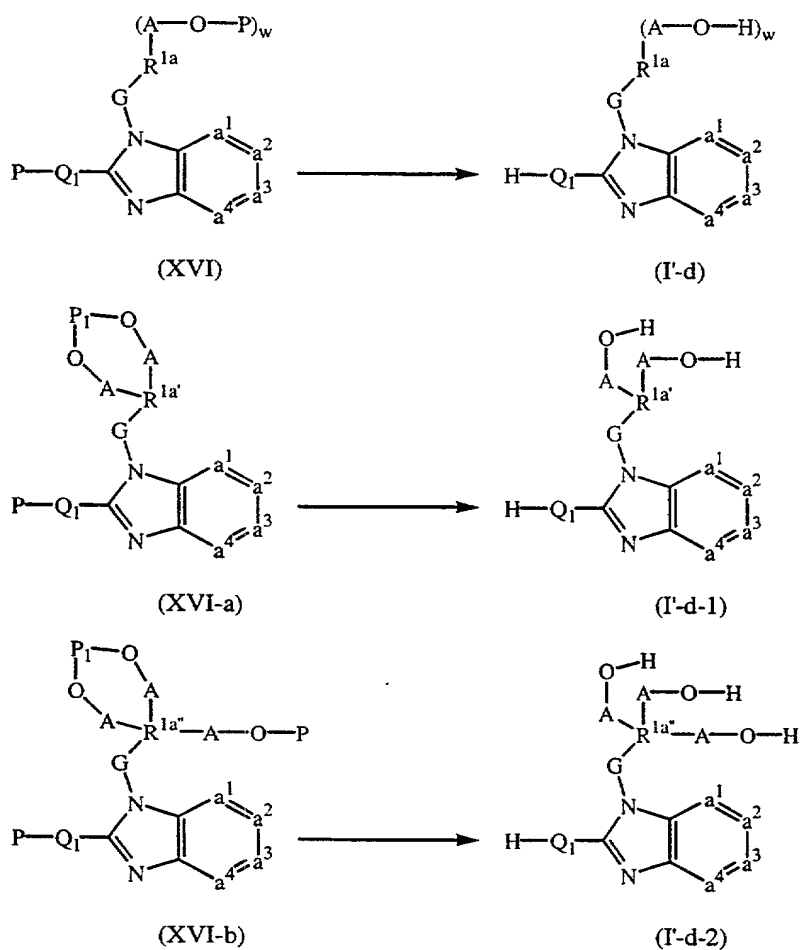
- Compounds of formula (I'-c), wherein R^{2a} represents C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, said R^{2a} being represented by [(C₁₋₉alkyl)CH₂OH]-N(R⁶)₂, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-c-1), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.



Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, R² or one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H-Q₁, and wherein R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle substituted with 1 or more substituents selected from hydroxy,

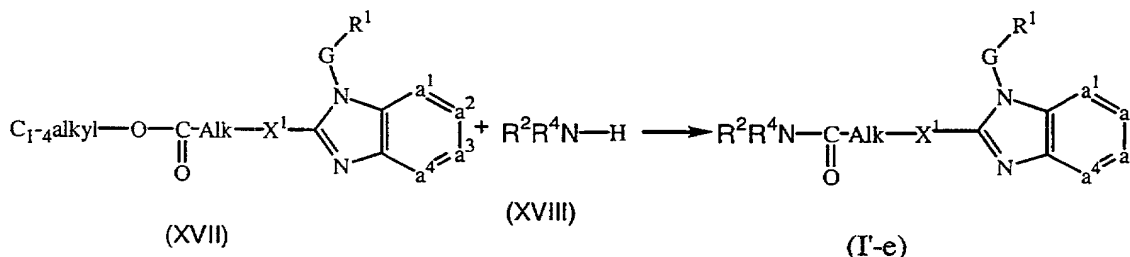
hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, said substituents being represented by formula A-OH, said R¹ being represented by R^{1a}-(A-OH)_w, with w being the amount of substituents on R^{1a} ranging from 1 to 4, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-d), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, optionally in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

Alternatively, one protecting group may also protect more than one substituent of R^{1a}, said protecting group being represented by P₁, as represented by formula (XVI-a). The two ways of protecting the substituents of R^{1a}, i.e. with a separate, as in formula (XVI), or a combined, as in formula (XVI-a), protecting group, may also be combined in the same intermediate, as represented by formula (XVI-b).

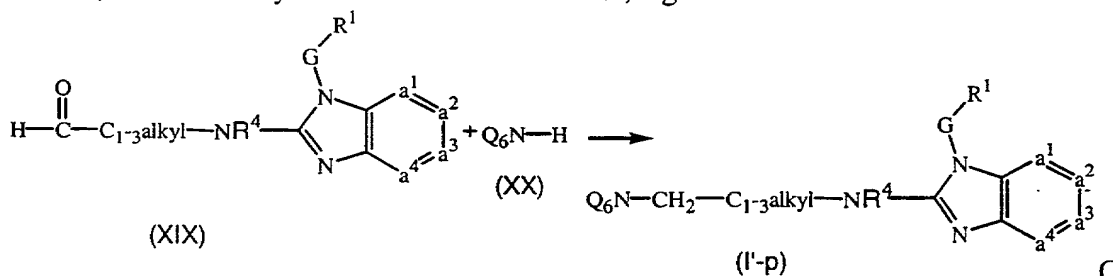


Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-2), said compounds being represented by formula (I'-e), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XVII) with an intermediate of formula (XVIII) in the presence of sodium

cyanide and a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol and the like.



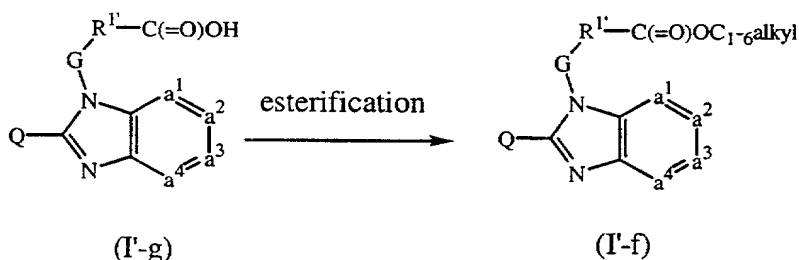
Compounds of formula (I'), wherein in the definition of Q, X² is C₂₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, said Q being represented by Q₆N-CH₂-C₁₋₃alkyl-NR⁴, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-p), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XIX) with an intermediate of formula (XX) in the presence of isopropyl titanate (IV) and a suitable reducing agent, such as NaBH₃CN, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride or an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.



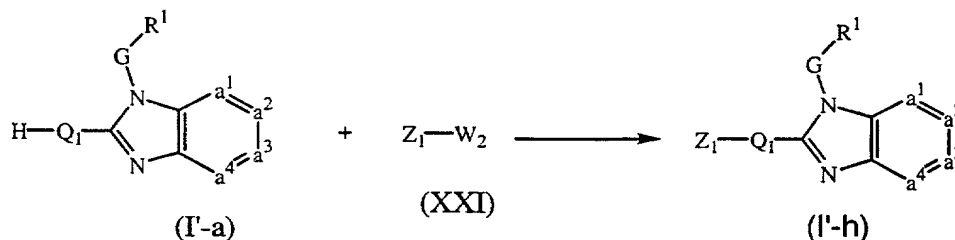
Compounds of formula (I') may be converted into each other following art-known functional group transformation reactions, comprising those described hereinafter.

The compounds of formula (I') may be converted to the corresponding *N*-oxide forms following art-known procedures for converting a trivalent nitrogen into its *N*-oxide form. Said *N*-oxidation reaction may generally be carried out by reacting the starting material of formula (I') with an appropriate organic or inorganic peroxide. Appropriate inorganic peroxides comprise, for example, hydrogen peroxide, alkali metal or earth alkaline metal peroxides, e.g. sodium peroxide, potassium peroxide; appropriate organic peroxides may comprise peroxy acids such as, for example, benzenecarboxoperoxoic acid or halo substituted benzenecarboxoperoxoic acid, e.g. 3-chlorobenzenecarboxoperoxoic acid, peroxyalkanoic acids, e.g. peroxyacetic acid, alkylhydroperoxides, e.g. *t*-butyl hydroperoxide. Suitable solvents are, for example, water, lower alcohols, e.g. ethanol and the like, hydrocarbons, e.g. toluene, ketones, e.g. 2-butanone, halogenated hydrocarbons, e.g. dichloromethane, and mixtures of such solvents.

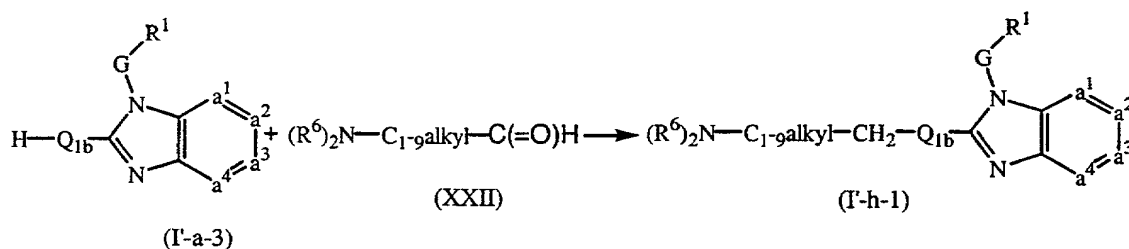
- Compounds of formula (I'), wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl, said R^1 being represented by $R^1-C(=O)OC_{1-6}alkyl$, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-f), can be prepared by esterification of a compound of formula (I'-g) in the presence of a suitable alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, pentanol, hexanol and the like, and in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like.



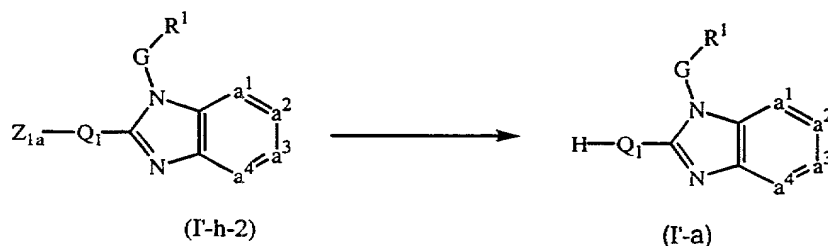
- Compounds of formula (I'-a) may be converted into compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is other than hydrogen, said R^2 or R^6 being represented by Z_1 , said Q being represented by Z_1-Q_1 , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h), by reaction with a reagent of formula (XXI), wherein W_2 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, or 4-methylbenzenesulphonate, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example disodium carbonate, dipotassium carbonate, sodium hydroxide and the like, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, acetonitrile, *N,N*-dimethylformamide.



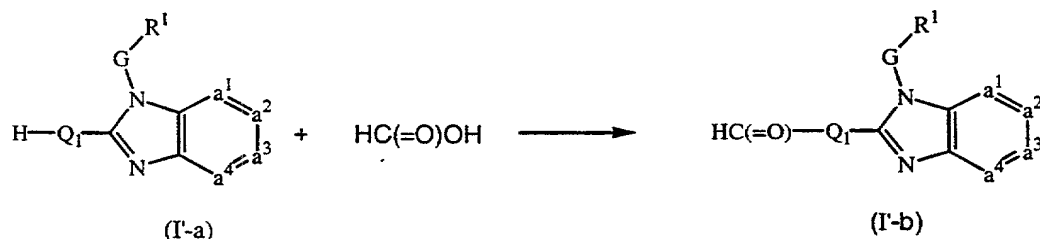
- Compounds of formula (I'-h), wherein, in the definition of Z_1 , R^2 is $CH_2-C_{1-9}alkyl$ substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h-1), can also be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a) wherein, in the definition of $H-Q_1$, R^2 is hydrogen, said $H-Q_1$ being represented by $H-Q_{1b}$, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-3), with an intermediate of formula (XXII), in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as sodium cyanoborohydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.



Compounds of formula (I'-h), wherein Z₁ comprises formyl, C₁₋₆alkylcarbonyl, or C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, said Z₁ being represented by Z_{1a}, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h-2), can be converted into compounds of formula (I'-a), by
 5 by acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol, sec. butanol
 10 and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to work at elevated temperatures.

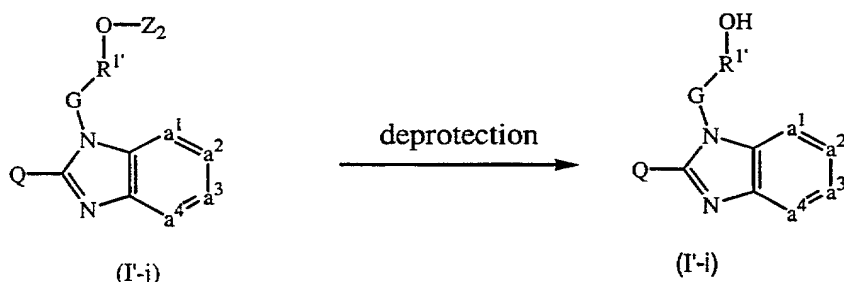


Compounds of formula (I'-b) can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a) with formic acid.

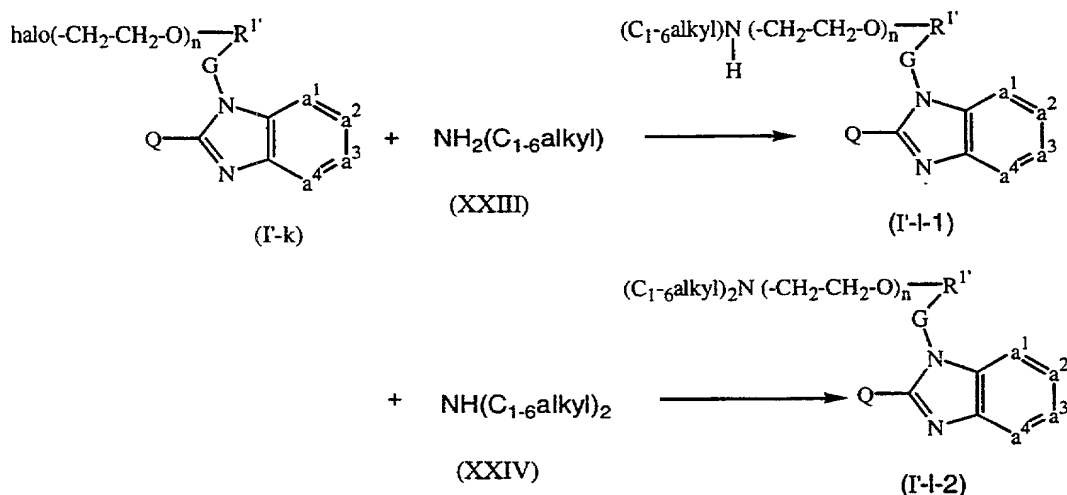


Compounds of formula (I') wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with hydroxy, said R¹ being represented by HO-R^{1'}, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-i), can be prepared by deprotecting a compound of formula (I'-j), wherein R¹ is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with C₁₋₆alkyloxy or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, said C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl being represented by Z₂, and said R¹ being represented by Z₂-O-R^{1'}. Said deprotection can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as, for
 15
 20

example methylene chloride, in the presence of a suitable deprotecting agent, e.g. tribromoborane.

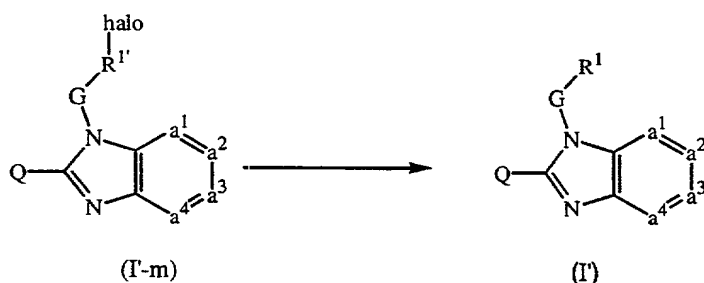


- 5 Compounds of formula (I') wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with halo($-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{O}$) $_n$, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-k), can be converted into a compound of formula (I'-l-1) or (I'-l-2) by reaction with the appropriate amine of formula (XXIII) or (XXIV) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

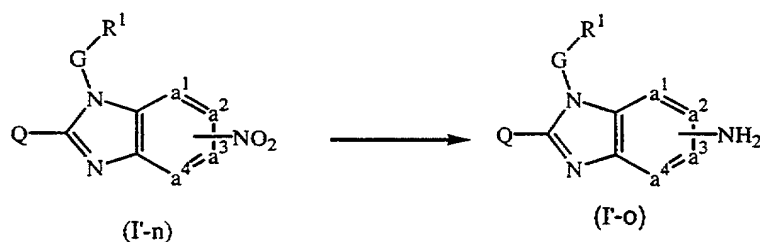


- 10 Compounds of formula (I'), wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with halo, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-m) can be converted into compounds of formula (I') by reaction with 1-butanethiol in the presence of palladium-on-charcoal and CaO in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.

-29-



- Compounds of formula (I') wherein a hydrogen atom in the radicals of formula (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) or (a-5) is replaced by nitro, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-n) may be reduced to a compound of formula (I'-o) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as platinum-on-charcoal, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, e.g. a thiophene solution. The reaction may be performed in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.



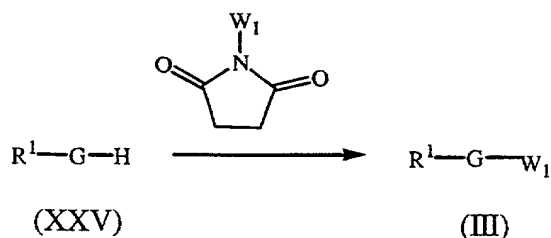
- The reactions described hereinabove for the preparation of the compounds of formula (I') can also be used to prepare the compounds of the group (I'').

- In the following paragraphs, there are described several methods of preparing the intermediates in the foregoing preparations. A number of intermediates and starting materials are commercially available or are known compounds which may be prepared according to conventional reaction procedures generally known in the art or analogous to the procedures described in EP-A-0,005,318 , EP-A-0,099,139 , EP-A-0,151,824 , EP-A-0,151,826 , EP-A-0,232,937 , EP-A-0,295,742 , EP-A-0,297,661 , EP-A-0,539,420 , EP-A-0,539,421 , US 4,634,704 , US 4,695,569.

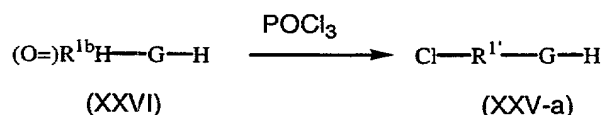
- In the foregoing and the following preparations, the reaction mixture is worked up following art-known methods and the reaction product is isolated and, if necessary, further purified.

- Intermediates of formula (III) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXV) with a suitable leaving group, i.e. W₁, introducing agent, e.g. 1-halo-

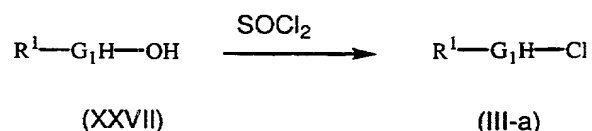
2,5-pyrrolidinedione, in the presence of dibenzoyl peroxide, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrachloromethane.



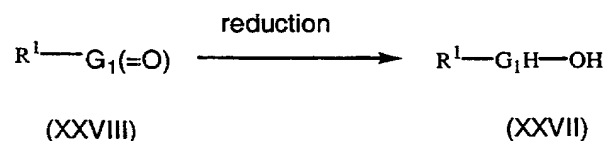
Intermediates of formula (XXV), wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with chloro, said R^1 being represented by Cl-R^1 and said intermediates being represented by formula (XXV-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVI), wherein $(\text{O=})\text{R}^{\text{b}}\text{H}$ is defined as a carbonyl derivative of R^1 wherein one carbon or nitrogen, adjacent to the carbonyl, carries at least one hydrogen, with phosphorus oxychloride. Intermediates of formula (XXVI) may also react as their enol tautomeric forms.



Intermediates of formula (III) wherein W_1 is chloro, which is attached to a carbon atom carrying at least one hydrogen, said G being represented by G_1H , and said intermediates being represented by formula (III-a), can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVII) with thionylchloride in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. methylene chloride.



Intermediates of formula (XXVII) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XXVIII) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride.



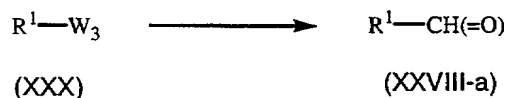
Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXVII) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXIX), wherein P is a suitable protecting group, e.g. C_{1-4} alkylcarbonyl, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydroxide.

-31-

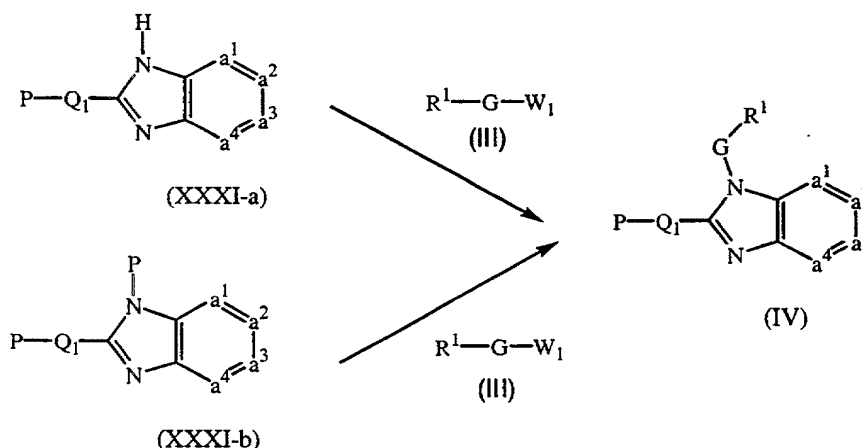


Intermediates of formula (XXVIII), wherein $\text{G}_1(=\text{O})$ is $\text{CH}(=\text{O})$, said intermediates being represented by formula (XXVIII-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXX), wherein W_3 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g.

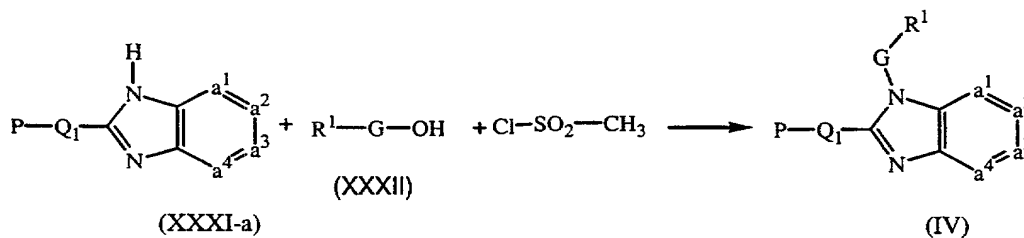
- 5 bromo, with *N,N*-dimethylformamide in the presence of butyllithium in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, diethylether or a mixture thereof.



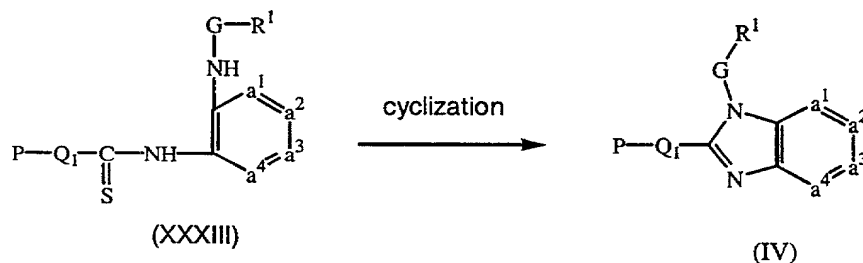
- Intermediates of formula (IV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b), wherein P represents a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, C_{1-4} alkyloxycarbonyl, with an intermediate of formula (III) according to the reaction described for the general preparation of compounds of formula (I').



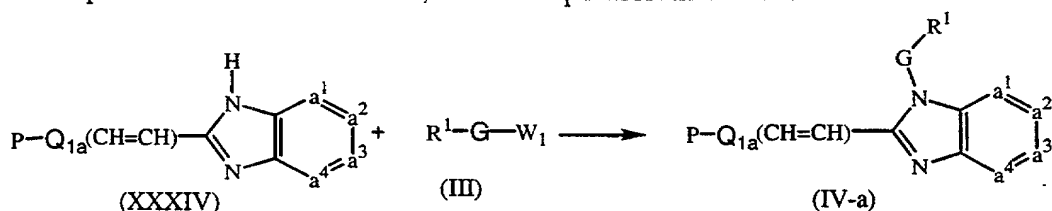
- Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXI-a) with an intermediate of formula (XXXII) that has reacted with methanesulfonyl chloride, in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. *N,N*-dimethylformamide.



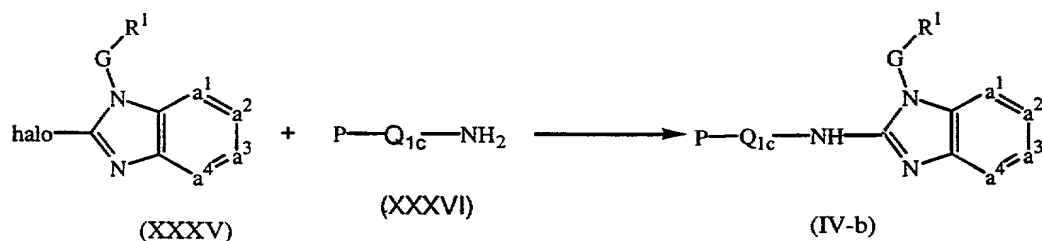
Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by a cyclization reaction of an intermediate of formula (XXXIII) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol or *N,N*-dimethylformamide, in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur.



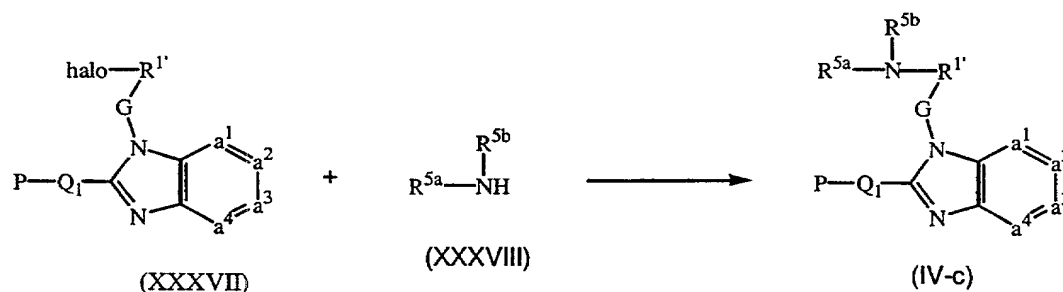
- 5 Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, said Q_1 being represented by $Q_{1a}(\text{CH}=\text{CH})$, and said intermediates by formula (IV-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIV) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate.



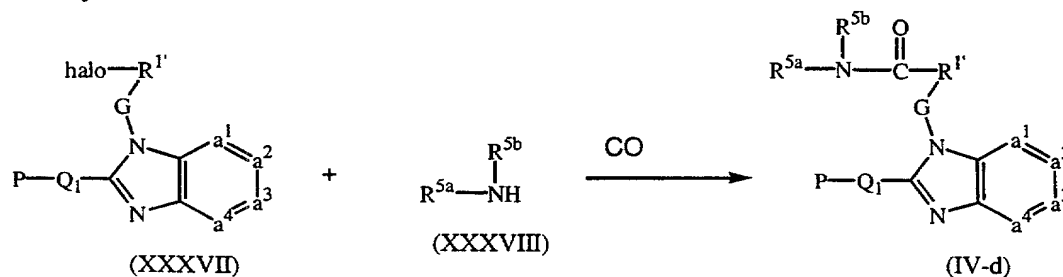
- 10 Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein, in the definition of Q_1 , the X^1 or X^2 moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q_1 being represented by $Q_{1c}\text{-NH}$, and said intermediates by formula (IV-b), may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXV) with an intermediate of formula (XXXVI).



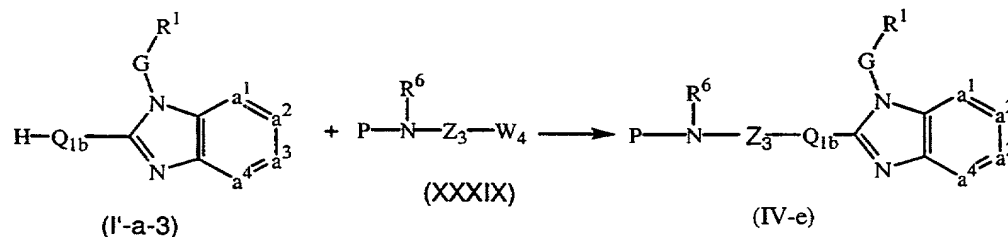
- 15 Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with amino or mono- or di(C_{1-6} alkyl)amino, said R^1 being represented by $R^{5a}R^{5b}N\text{-}R^1$, wherein R^{5a} and R^{5b} are defined as described hereinabove, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-c), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVII) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XXXVIII), in the presence of an appropriate catalyst, e.g. palladium, and (R)-(+)-2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.
- 20



- Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R^1 is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with $\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{NR}^{5a}\text{R}^{5b}$, wherein R^{5a} and R^{5b} are defined as described hereinabove, said R^1 being represented by $\text{R}^{5a}\text{R}^{5b}\text{N}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{R}^{1'}$, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-d), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVII) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XXXVIII), under an atmosphere of carbon monoxide, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. palladium (II) acetate, and 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

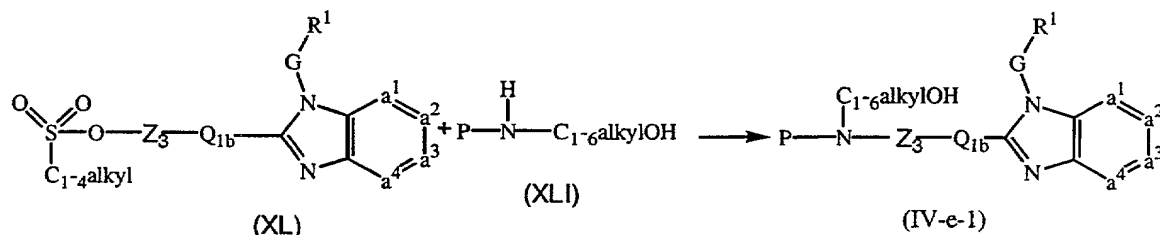


- Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein $\text{P}-\text{Q}_1$ comprises C_{1-10} alkyl or C_{3-7} cycloalkyl substituted with NR^6-P , said C_{1-10} alkyl or C_{3-7} cycloalkyl being represented by Z_3 , said $\text{P}-\text{Q}_1$ being represented by $\text{P}-\text{N} \text{R}^6-\text{Z}_3-\text{Q}_{1b}$, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-e), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (XXXIX), wherein W_4 represents a suitable leaving group, such as p-toluenesulphonate. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

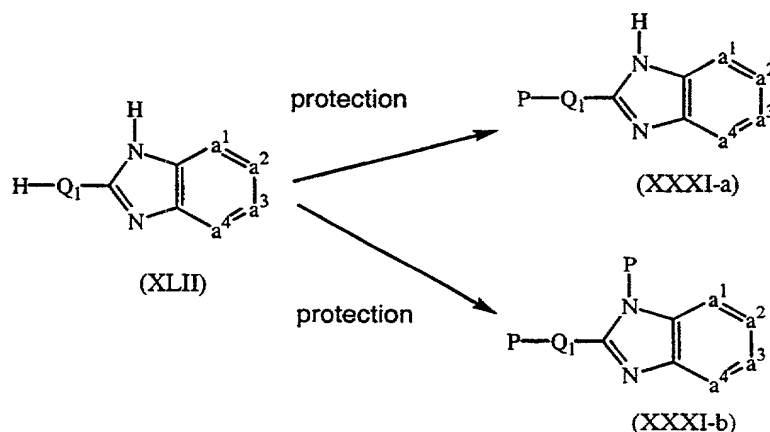


- Intermediates of formula (IV-e), wherein R^6 is hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-e-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of

formula (XL) with an intermediate of formula (XLI) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.



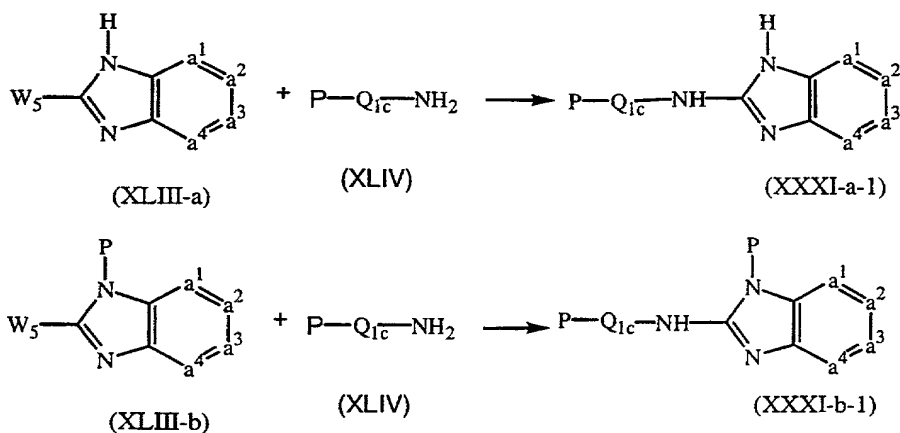
Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b) can be prepared by protecting an intermediate of formula (XLII) with a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, $C_{1-4}alkyloxycarbonyl$, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride or an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, in the presence of a suitable reagent, e.g. $diC_{1-4}alkyldicarbonate$, and optionally in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium acetate.



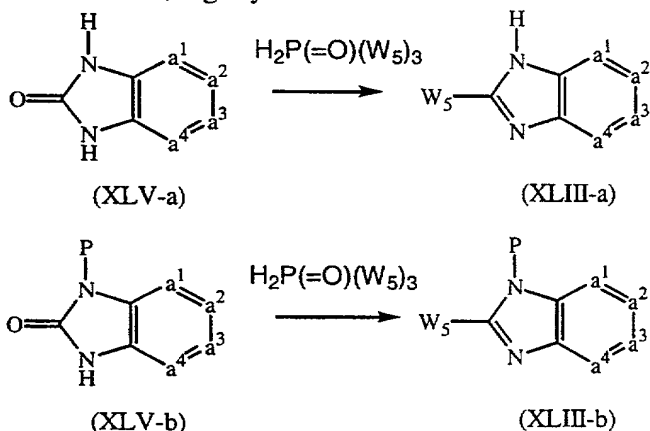
Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b) can be converted into an intermediate of formula (XLII) by reaction with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid or hydrobromic acid and the like or mixtures thereof, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. water.

Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b), wherein in the definition of Q_1 , the X^1 or X^2 moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH , said Q_1 being represented by $Q_{1c}-NH$, and said intermediates by formula (XXXI-a-1) or (XXXI-b-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLIII-a) or (XLIII-b), wherein W_5 represents a suitable leaving group, such as for example a halo atom, e.g. chloro, with an intermediate of formula (XLIV).

-35-

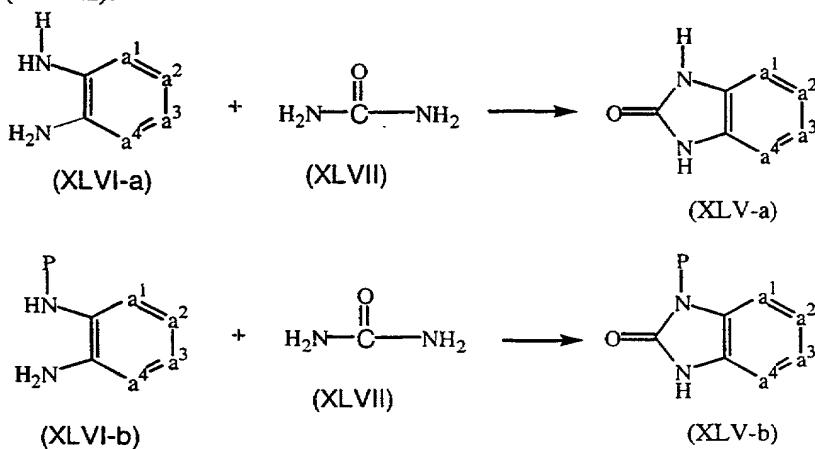


Intermediates of formula (XLIII-a) or (XLIII-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b) with $\text{H}_2\text{P}(=\text{O})(\text{W}_5)_3$ in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid.

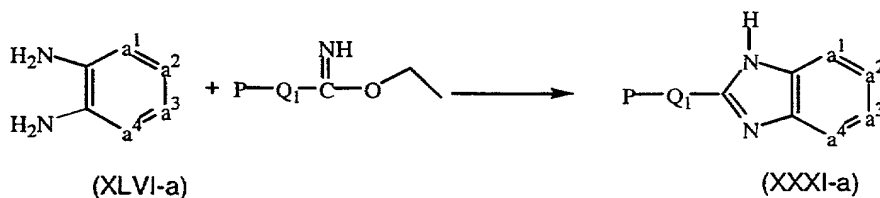


5

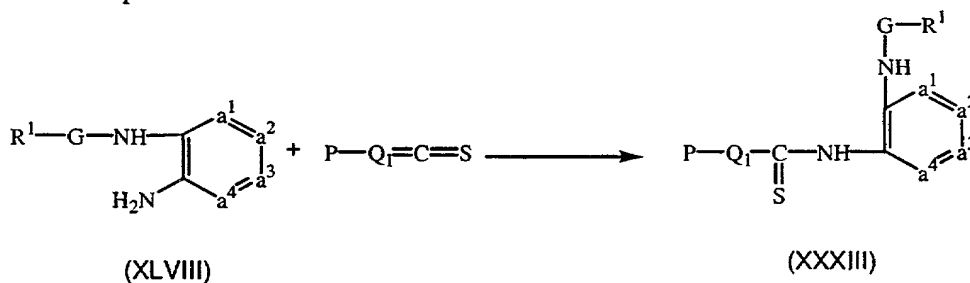
Intermediates of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVI-a) or (XLVI-b) with an intermediate of formula (XLVII).



Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVI-a) with $P-Q_1-C(=NH)-O-CH_2-CH_3$ in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

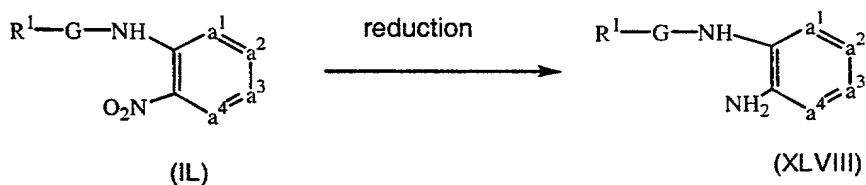


- 5 Intermediates of formula (XXXIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVIII) with an intermediate of formula $P-Q_1-C=S$, which is synthesized according to the procedures described in EP 0005318, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. ethanol. To increase the reaction rate, the reaction may be performed at elevated temperatures.

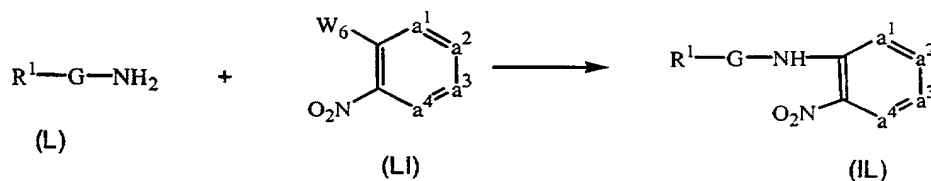


10

Intermediates of formula (XLVIII) can be obtained by reducing an intermediate of formula (II) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst, e.g. Raney Nickel.

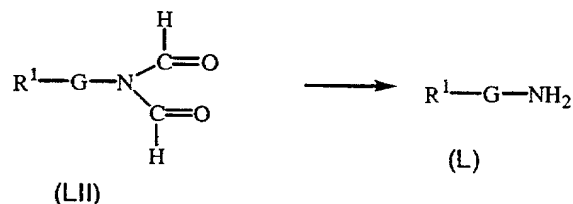


- 15 Intermediates of formula (II) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (L) with an intermediate of formula (LI), in which W_6 represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro. The reaction may be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

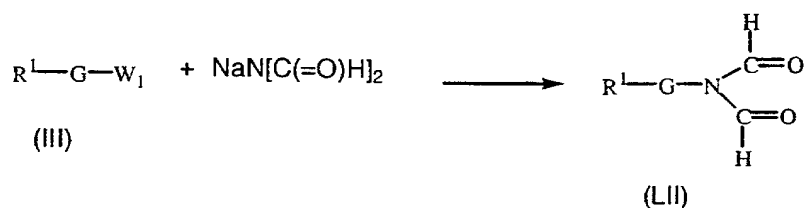


20

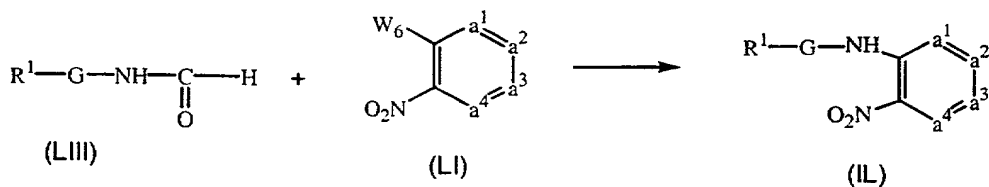
Intermediates of formula (L) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LII) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.



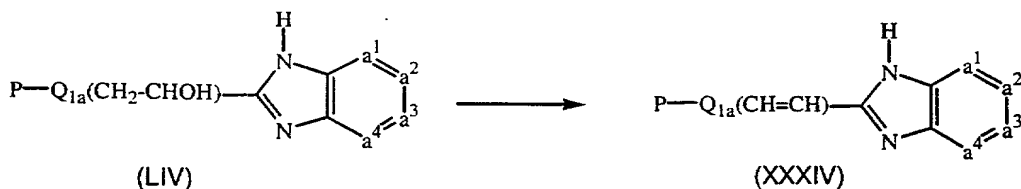
- 5 Intermediates of formula (LII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (III) with $\text{NaN}[\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{H}]_2$.



- 10 Intermediates of formula (IL) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LI) with an intermediate of formula (LIII) (J. Org. Chem., 25, p 1138, 1960) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. *N,N*-dimethylformamide, in the presence of an appropriate base, e.g. sodium hydride.

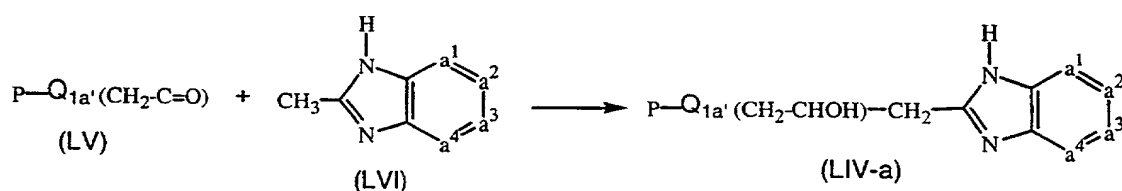


Intermediates of formula (XXXIV) can be prepared by dehydrating an intermediate of formula (LIV) with a suitable acid, such as sulfuric acid.

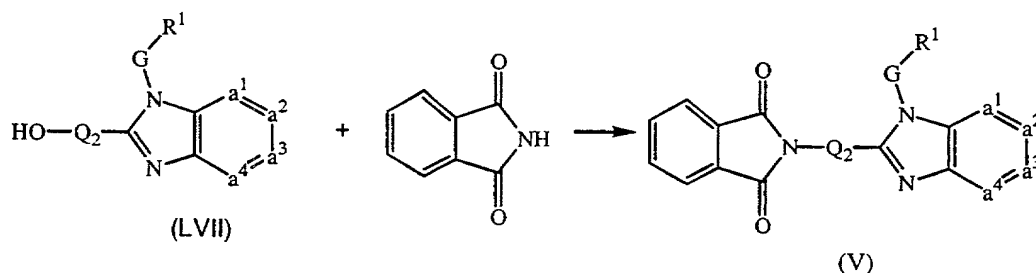


- 15 Intermediates of formula (LIV) wherein, in the definition of Q_{1a} , the X^1 or X^2 moieties are CH_2 , said Q_{1a} being represented by $\text{Q}_{1a'}$, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LIV-a), can be prepared by reacting a carbonyl moiety of formula (LV) with an intermediate of formula (LVI) in the presence of *N,N*-diisopropylamine and butyl lithium, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.
- 20

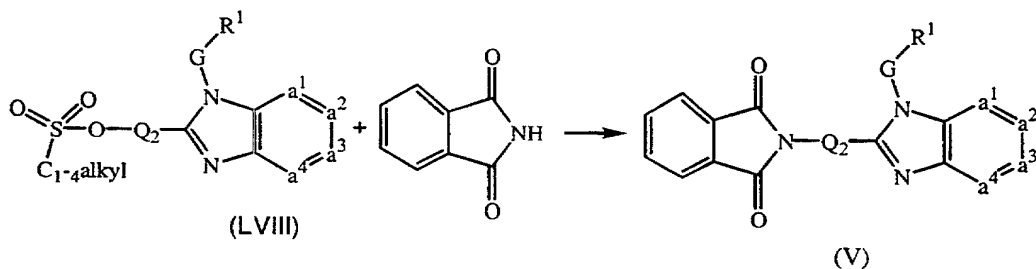
-38-



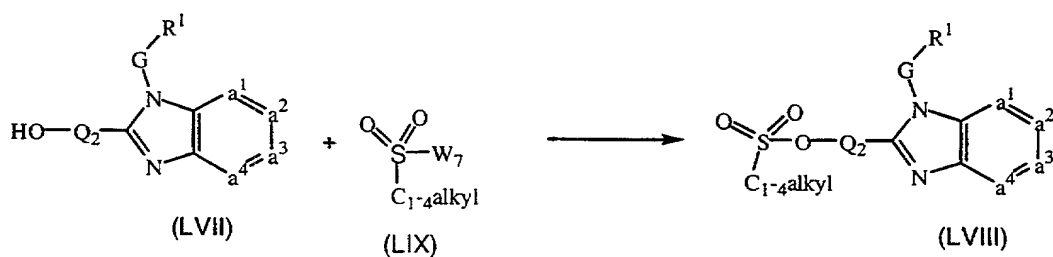
Intermediates of formula (V) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVII) with 1*H*-isoindole-1,3 (2*H*)-dione in the presence of triphenylphosphine and diethyl azodicarboxylate.



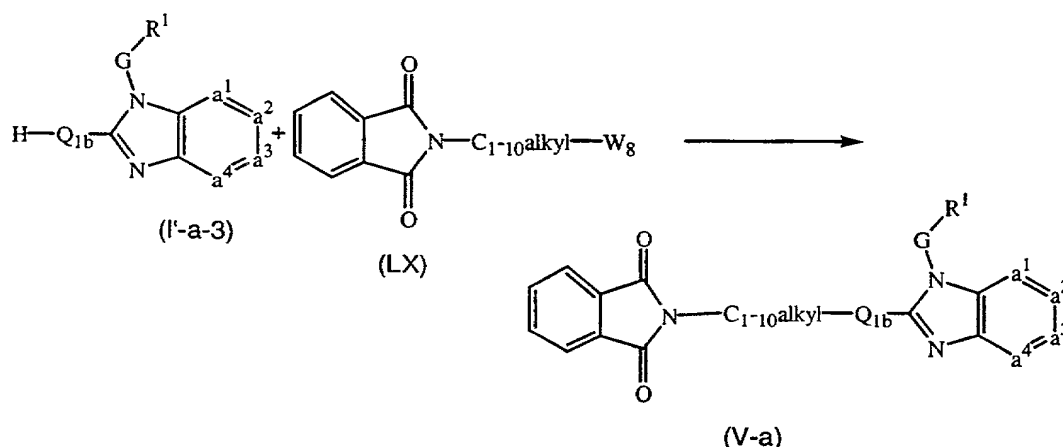
Intermediates of formula (V) may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVIII) with 1*H*-isoindole-1,3 (2*H*)-dione in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and a suitable solvent, such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide.



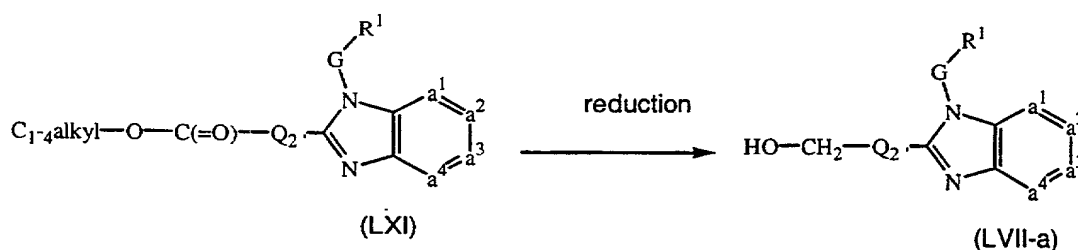
- 10 Intermediates of formula (LVIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVII) with an intermediate of formula (LIX), wherein W_7 represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as *N,N*-diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.



- Intermediates of formula (V), wherein in the definition of Q_2 , R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl, said Q_2 being represented by C_{1-10} alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates by formula (V-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LX), wherein W_8 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, such as acetonitrile.

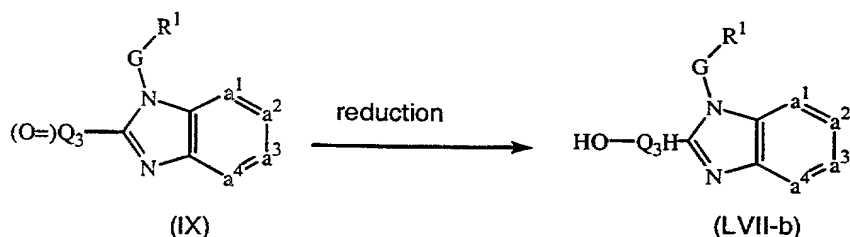


- Intermediates of formula (LVII) wherein, in the definition of Q_2 , the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, also carries two hydrogen atoms, said $HO-Q_2$ being represented by $HO-CH_2-Q_2$, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LVII-a), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXI) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

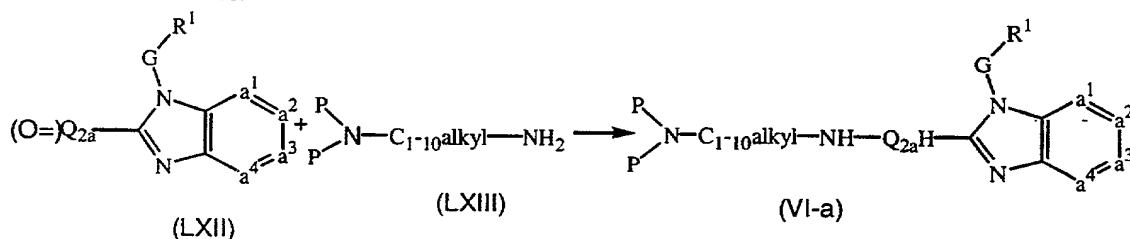


- Intermediates of formula (LVII), wherein, in the definition of Q_2 , the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also at least one hydrogen, said $HO-Q_2$ being represented by $HO-Q_3H$, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LVII-b), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (IX) with a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.

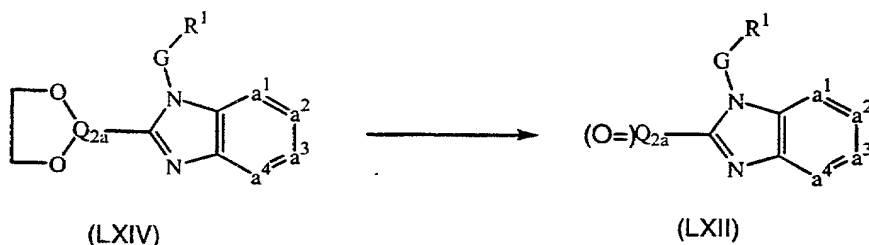
-40-



- Intermediates of formula (VI) wherein, in the definition of Q_2 , R^2 is C_{1-10} alkyl substituted with $N(P)_2$ and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 substituent carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said Q_2 being represented by
- 5 (P)₂-N- C_{1-10} alkyl-NH- Q_{2a} H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (VI-a), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (LXII) with an intermediate of formula (LXIII) in the presence of a suitable reductive agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, such
- 10 as a thiophene solution. A suitable solvent in this reaction is a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

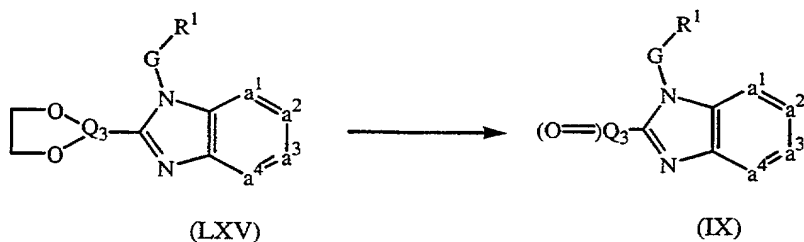


- Intermediates of formula (LXII) can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXIV) in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. water.
- 15

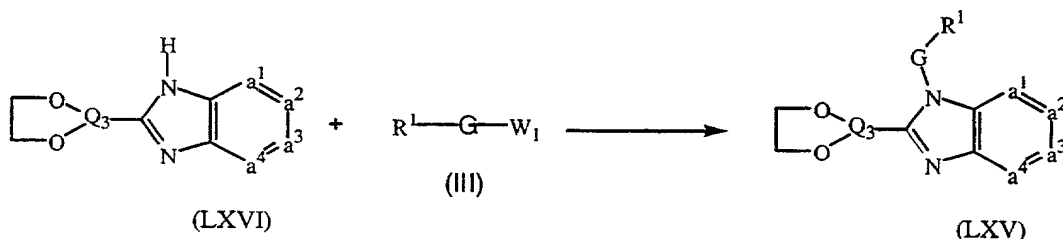


Intermediates of formula (IX) may be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXV) in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid and the like.

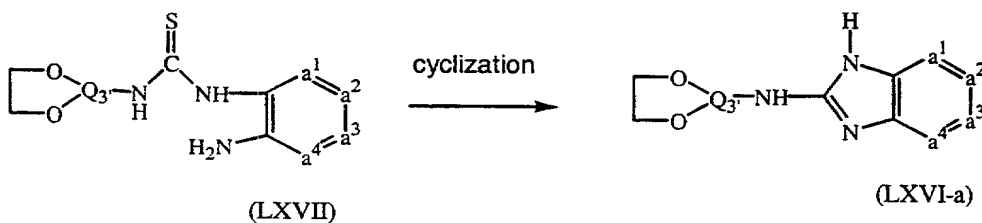
-41-



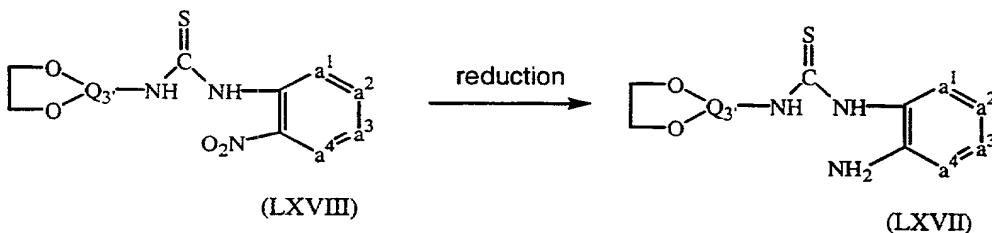
Intermediates of formula (LXV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXVI) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.



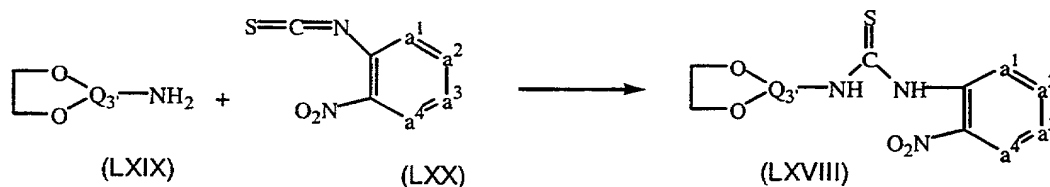
Intermediates of formula (LXVI) wherein, in the definition of Q₃, the X¹ or X² moiety of the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q₃ being represented by Q₃-NH, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LXVI-a), may be prepared by cyclizing an intermediate of formula (LXVII) in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.



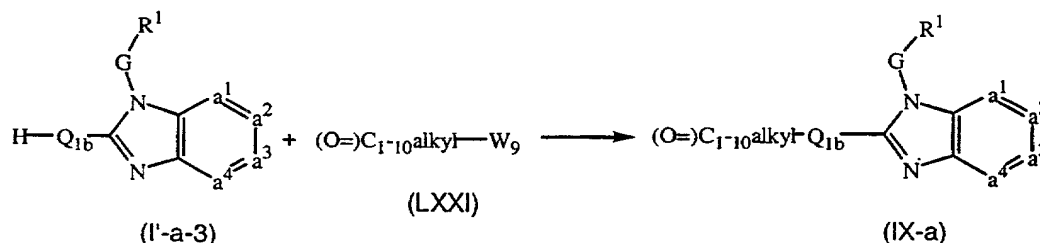
Intermediates of formula (LXVII) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXVIII) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. a mixture of ammonia in alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.



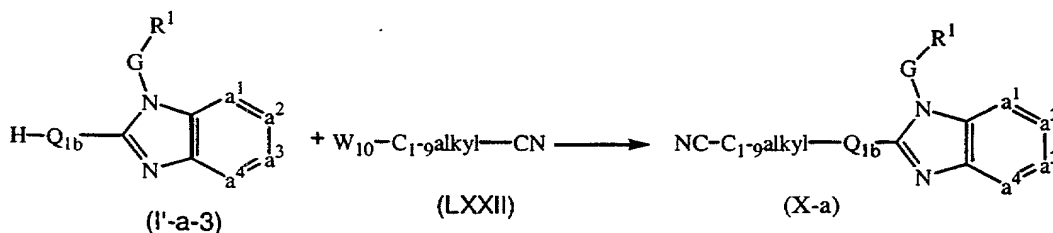
Intermediates of formula (LXVIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXIX) with an intermediate of formula (LXX) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. ethanol.



- 5 Intermediates of formula (IX), wherein, in the definition of Q_3 , R^2 comprises C_{1-10} alkyl, said Q_3 being represented by C_{1-10} alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates being represented by formula (IX-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXI), wherein $(\text{O}=\text{C})_{1-10}$ alkyl represents a carbonyl derivative of C_{1-10} alkyl and wherein W_9 is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo,
- 10 in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

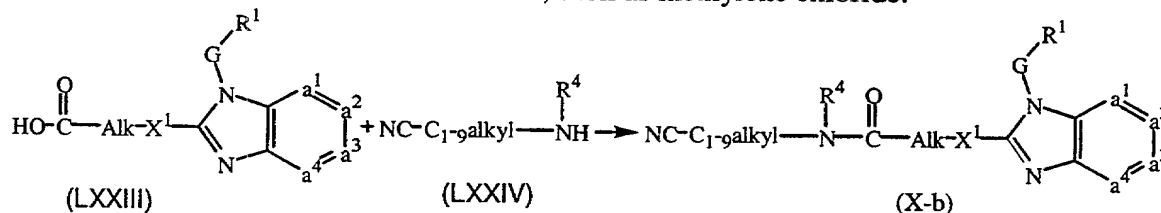


- Intermediates of formula (X) wherein Q_4 comprises C_{1-9} alkyl, said Q_4 being represented by C_{1-9} alkyl- Q_{1b} , and said intermediates being represented by formula (X-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXII),
- 15 wherein W_{10} represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate and the like.

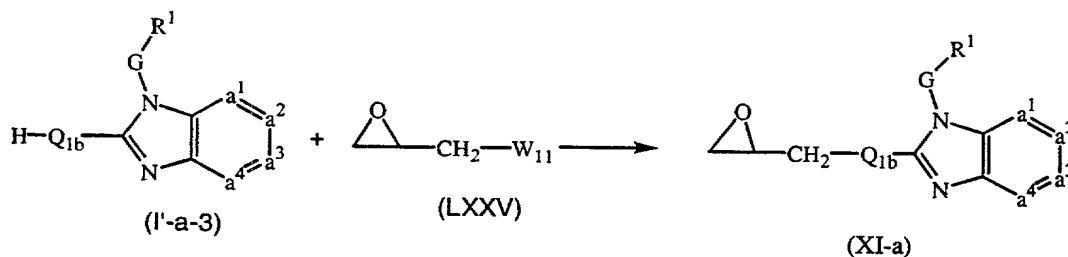


- 20 Intermediates of formula (X), wherein NC-Q_4 represents $\text{NC-(C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl)(R}^4\text{)N-C(=O)-Alk-X}^1$, said intermediates being represented by formula (X-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXIII) with an intermediate of formula (LXXIV)

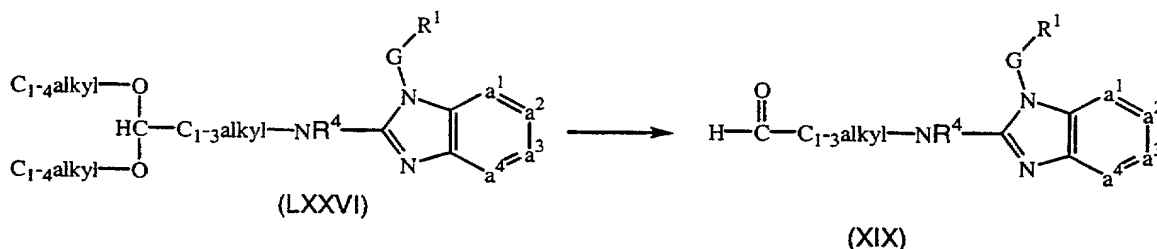
in the presence of di-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl-methanone, a suitable base, such as *N,N*-diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.



- Intermediates of formula (XI), wherein Q_{1b} represents Q_{1b} , said intermediates being represented by formula (XI-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LXXV), wherein W_{11} represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as disodium carbonate, and in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as 3-methyl-2-butanone.



Intermediates of formula (XIX) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXVI) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid.



- Pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) may be obtained by the application of art-known procedures. Diastereomers may be separated by physical methods such as selective crystallization and chromatographic techniques, e.g., counter-current distribution, liquid chromatography and the like.

- The compounds of formula (I) as prepared in the hereinabove described processes are generally racemic mixtures of enantiomers which can be separated from one another following art-known resolution procedures. The racemic compounds of formula (I) which are sufficiently basic or acidic may be converted into the corresponding diastereomeric salt forms by reaction with a suitable chiral acid, respectively chiral base.

Said diastereomeric salt forms are subsequently separated, for example, by selective or fractional crystallization and the enantiomers are liberated therefrom by alkali or acid. An alternative manner of separating the enantiomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) involves liquid chromatography, in particular liquid chromatography using a chiral stationary phase. Said pure stereochemically isomeric forms may also be derived from the corresponding pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the appropriate starting materials, provided that the reaction occurs stereospecifically. Preferably if a specific stereoisomer is desired, said compound will be synthesized by stereospecific methods of preparation. These methods will advantageously employ enantiomerically pure starting materials.

The compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof, show antiviral properties. Viral infections treatable using the compounds and methods of the present invention include those infections brought on by ortho- and paramyxoviruses and in particular by human and bovine respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).

The *in vitro* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds was tested in a test as described in the experimental part of the description, and may also be demonstrated in a virus yield reduction assay. The *in vivo* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds may be demonstrated in a test model using cotton rats as described in Wyde et al. (Antiviral Research (1998), 38, 31-42).

Due to their antiviral properties, particularly their anti-RSV properties, the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof, their prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms, are useful in the treatment of individuals experiencing a viral infection, particularly a RSV infection, and for the prophylaxis of these infections. In general, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of warm-blooded animals infected with viruses, in particular the respiratory syncytial virus.

The compounds of formula (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof may therefore be used as medicines. In particular, the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may be used in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment or the prevention of viral infections, especially RSV infections. The use as a medicine or method of treatment comprises the systemic administration to viral infected

subjects or to subjects susceptible to viral infections of an amount effective to combat the conditions associated with the viral infection, in particular the RSV infection.

5 The compounds of the present invention or any subgroup thereof may be formulated into various pharmaceutical forms for administration purposes. As appropriate compositions there may be cited all compositions usually employed for systemically administering drugs. To prepare the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention, an effective amount of the particular compound, optionally in addition salt form or as metal complex, as the active ingredient is combined in intimate admixture with a
10 pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, which carrier may take a wide variety of forms depending on the form of preparation desired for administration. These pharmaceutical compositions are desirable in unitary dosage form suitable, particularly, for administration orally, rectally, percutaneously, or by parenteral injection. For example, in preparing the compositions in oral dosage form, any of the usual pharmaceutical
15 media may be employed such as, for example, water, glycols, oils, alcohols and the like in the case of oral liquid preparations such as suspensions, syrups, elixirs, emulsions and solutions; or solid carriers such as starches, sugars, kaolin, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents and the like in the case of powders, pills, capsules, and tablets. Because of their ease in administration, tablets and capsules represent the most
20 advantageous oral dosage unit forms, in which case solid pharmaceutical carriers are obviously employed. For parenteral compositions, the carrier will usually comprise sterile water, at least in large part, though other ingredients, for example, to aid solubility, may be included. Injectable solutions, for example, may be prepared in which the carrier comprises saline solution, glucose solution or a mixture of saline and
25 glucose solution. Injectable suspensions may also be prepared in which case appropriate liquid carriers, suspending agents and the like may be employed. Also included are solid form preparations which are intended to be converted, shortly before use, to liquid form preparations. In the compositions suitable for percutaneous administration, the carrier optionally comprises a penetration enhancing agent and/or a
30 suitable wetting agent, optionally combined with suitable additives of any nature in minor proportions, which additives do not introduce a significant deleterious effect on the skin.

The compounds of the present invention may also be administered via oral inhalation or insufflation by means of methods and formulations employed in the art for
35 administration via this way. Thus, in general the compounds of the present invention may be administered to the lungs in the form of a solution, a suspension or a dry powder, a solution being preferred. Any system developed for the delivery of solutions,

suspensions or dry powders via oral inhalation or insufflation are suitable for the administration of the present compounds.

Thus, the present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition adapted for administration by inhalation or insufflation through the mouth comprising a compound
5 of formula (I') or a compound of the group (I'') and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Preferably, the compounds of the present invention are administered via inhalation of a solution in nebulized or aerosolized doses.

It is especially advantageous to formulate the aforementioned pharmaceutical
10 compositions in unit dosage form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Unit dosage form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active ingredient calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. Examples of such unit dosage forms are tablets (including scored or coated
15 tablets), capsules, pills, powder packets, suppositories, wafers, injectable solutions or suspensions and the like, and segregated multiples thereof.

In general it is contemplated that an antivirally effective daily amount would be from 0.01 mg/kg to 500 mg/kg body weight, more preferably from 0.1 mg/kg to 50 mg/kg
20 body weight. It may be appropriate to administer the required dose as two, three, four or more sub-doses at appropriate intervals throughout the day. Said sub-doses may be formulated as unit dosage forms, for example, containing 1 to 1000 mg, and in particular 5 to 200 mg of active ingredient per unit dosage form.

It may be appropriate to administer an antivirally effective daily dosage as two, three, four or more sub-doses at appropriate intervals throughout the day. Said sub-doses may be formulated as unit dosage forms.
25

The exact dosage and frequency of administration depends on the particular compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of group (I'') used, the particular condition being
30 treated, the severity of the condition being treated, the age, weight, sex, extent of disorder and general physical condition of the particular patient as well as other medication the individual may be taking, as is well known to those skilled in the art. Furthermore, it is evident that said effective daily amount may be lowered or increased
35 depending on the response of the treated subject and/or depending on the evaluation of the physician prescribing the compounds of the instant invention. The effective daily amount ranges mentioned hereinabove are therefore only guidelines.

Also, the combination of another antiviral agent and a compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of the group (I'') can be used as a medicine. Thus, the present invention also relates to a product containing (a) a compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of the group (I''), and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in antiviral treatment. The different drugs may be combined in a single preparation together with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. For instance, the compounds of the present invention may be combined with interferon-beta or tumor necrosis factor-alpha in order to treat or prevent RSV infections.

The following examples are intended to illustrate the present invention.

Experimental part

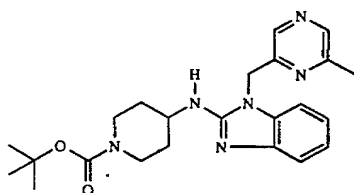
Hereinafter, "DMF" is defined as *N,N*-dimethylformamide, "DIPE" is defined as diisopropylether, "DMSO" is defined as dimethylsulfoxide, and "THF" is defined as tetrahydrofuran.

Preparation of the intermediate compounds

Example A1

a) NaOCH₃ (0.2 mol) was added to a mixture of *N*-(4-piperidiny)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrobromide (0.1 mol) in methanol (389ml), the mixture was cooled on an ice bath and stirred for 2 hours. Bis(1,1-dimethylethyl) dicarbonoate (0.1mol) was added to a cooled mixture on an ice bath and then stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The mixture was evaporated and suspended in water/DIPE. The residue was filtered off, washed with water/DIPE and dried. The residue was boiled up in CH₃OH. Yield : 17.46g of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinecarboxylate (55.2%) (interm. 1).

b) Preparation of



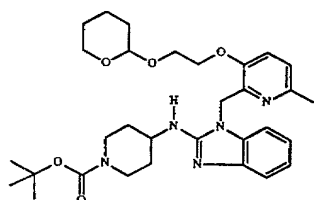
(interm. 2)

1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.055 mol) and then dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added to a mixture of 2,6-dimethylpyrazine (0.05 mol) in CCl₄ (100ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours, stirred at room temperature under N₂ flow overnight, cooled on an ice bath and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated, to give residue 1. NaH (0.04 mol) was added to a solution of intermediate (1) (0.04 mol) in DMF (150ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature under N₂ flow for 1 hour. Residue 1 was dissolved in DMF (50ml) and added dropwise to the mixture. The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. DMF was evaporated. The residue was taken

up in H₂O and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 6.82g of intermediate (2) (32%).

Example A2

Preparation of

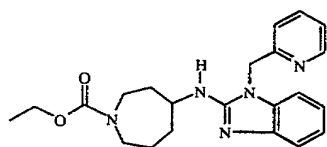


(interm. 3)

Reaction under N₂ flow. NaH 60% (0.02 mol) was added to a mixture of (±)-6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridinemethanol (0.02 mol) in DMF (75ml). Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.02 mol) was added. The mixture was added at room temperature to a mixture of intermediate (1) (0.02 mol) and NaH (0.022 mol) in DMF (100ml), previously stirred at 40°C for 1 hour. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.52g of intermediate (3) (31%).

Example A3

Preparation of

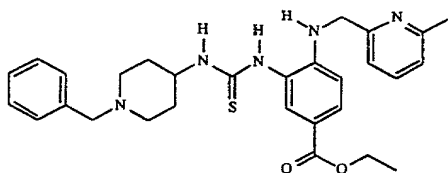


(interm. 4)

2-Chloro-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazole (0.0615 mol) and ethyl 4-amino-hexahydro-1H-azepine-1-carboxylate (0.123 mol) were stirred at 160°C for 3 hours. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13.6g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 98/2/0.1). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 10.5g of intermediate (4) (43%).

Example A4

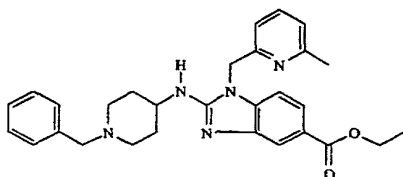
a) Preparation of



(interm. 5)

A mixture of ethyl 3-amino-4-[[[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]amino]benzoate (0.166 mol) and 4-isothiocyanato-1-(phenylmethyl)piperidine (0.166 mol) in ethanol (500ml) was stirred and refluxed for 8 hours and at room temperature overnight. The precipitate was filtered off and used without further purification. Yield: intermediate (5).

b) Preparation of

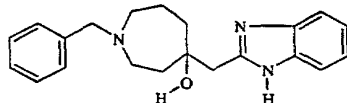


(interm. 6)

- 5 A mixture of intermediate (5) (0.16 mol), HgO (0.192 mol) and S (spat.tip) in DMF (100ml) was stirred at 80°C for 4 hours, filtered warm over dicalite, washed with warm DMF, heated again and filtered warm over dicalite. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was washed with H₂O. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was co-evaporated with toluene. The residue was crystallized from CH₃CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 53.5g of intermediate (6) (70%)

Example A5

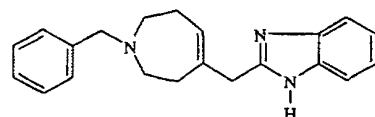
a) Preparation of



(interm. 7)

- 15 A mixture of *N*-(1-methylethyl)-2-propanamine (0.098 mol) in THF (100ml) was stirred at -40°C under N₂ flow. BuLi 1.6M in hexane (0.098 mol) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at -40°C for 30 min and cooled to -70°C. A mixture of 1-(diethoxymethyl)-2-methyl-1*H*-benzimidazole (0.098 mol) in THF (50ml) was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred for 45 minutes. A mixture of hexahydro-1-(phenylmethyl)-4*H*-azepin-4-one (0.049 mol) in THF (50ml) was added dropwise at -70°C. The mixture was hydrolyzed cold and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated (yielding 7.5g). Part of the residue (3.5g) was crystallized from EtOAc. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.3g of intermediate (7).

b) Preparation of

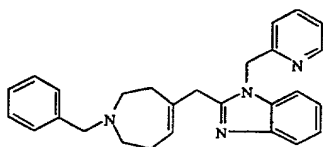


(interm. 8)

- 25 A mixture of intermediate (7) (0.029 mol) in 1,1'-oxybis[2-methoxyethane] (300ml) and H₂SO₄ conc. (20ml) was stirred at 160°C for 24 hours. Ice water was added. The mixture was basified with K₂CO₃ solid and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer

was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 18g of a mixture of 2 compounds, of which one compound is intermediate (8) (75%).

c) Preparation of

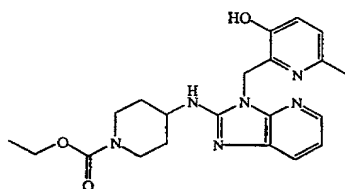


(interm. 9)

A mixture of intermediate (8), 2-(chloromethyl)pyridine (0.047 mol) and K_2CO_3 (0.0775 mol) in acetonitrile (500ml) was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours. H_2O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 15.4g of a mixture of 2 compounds, of which one is intermediate (9).

Example A6

Preparation of

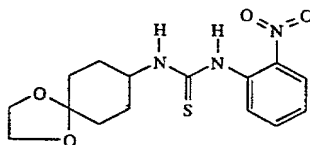


(interm. 10)

N,N-diethylethamine (16ml) and then 2-chloromethyl-6-methyl-3-pyridinol (0.0376 mol) were added to a mixture of ethyl 4-[(3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl)amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.0376 mol) in DMF (550ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was poured out into H_2O and CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by HPLC over silica gel (eluent: CH_2Cl_2/C_2H_5OH 95/5 to 70/30). The desired fraction was collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.1 g of intermediate (10).

Example A7

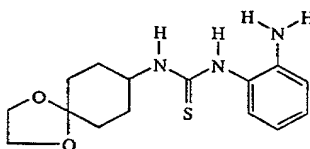
a) Preparation of



(interm. 11)

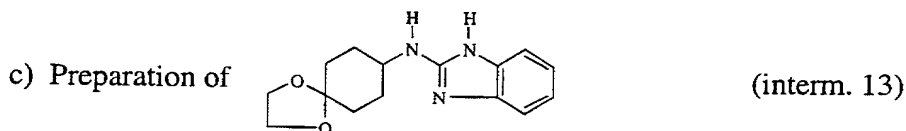
A mixture of 1,4-dioxaspiro[4,5]decan-8-amine (0.28 mol) and 1-isothiocyanato-2-nitrobenzene (0.28 mol) in ethanol (300ml) was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The product was used without further purification. Yield: 90g of intermediate (11).

b) Preparation of

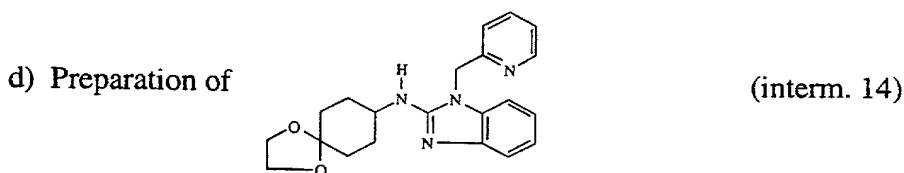


(interm. 12)

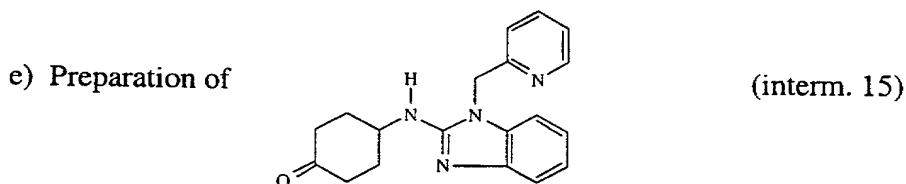
A mixture of intermediate (11) (0.178 mol) in $\text{NH}_3/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ (500ml) and THF (100ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours with Pd/C (52g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H_2 (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH_3OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The product was used without further purification. Yield: 44g of intermediate (12).



A mixture of intermediate (12) (0.071 mol), HgO (0.142 mol) and S (0.56g) in ethanol (300ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours, filtered over celite, washed with CH_2Cl_2 and the filtrate was evaporated. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The residues were combined and then purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ 94/6/0.5; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 14.5g of intermediate (13) (43%); mp. $>260^\circ\text{C}$.



A mixture of intermediate (13) (0.049 mol), 2-(chloromethyl)pyridine (0.0735 mol) and K_2CO_3 (0.196 mol) in acetonitrile (325ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and then brought to room temperature. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The mixtures were combined. H_2O was added and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO_4), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ 98/2/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Part of this fraction (0.6g) was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.46g of intermediate (14); mp. 136°C .

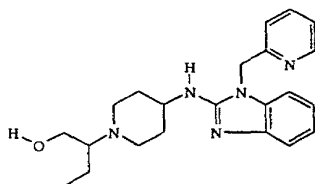


A mixture of intermediate (14) (0.077 mol) in HCl 3N (350ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour, poured out into ice water, basified with K_2CO_3 solid and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The organic layer was separated, washed with H_2O , dried (MgSO_4), filtered

and the solvent was evaporated. Part of the residue (1.5g) was crystallized from CH₃CN and diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.5g of intermediate (15); mp. 148°C.

Example A8

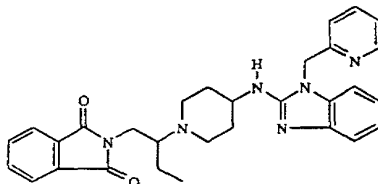
a) Preparation of



(interm. 16)

- 5 LiAlH₄ (0.023 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of (±)-ethyl α-ethyl-4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidineacetate (0.021 mol) in THF (100ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hour. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolyzed with ice water, filtered over celite, washed with EtOAc, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 7.2g of intermediate (16)
 10 (88%).

b) Preparation of

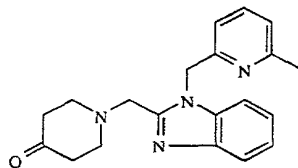


(interm. 17)

- Diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.028 mol) was added slowly at room temperature to a solution of intermediate (16) (0.019 mol), 1H-isoindole-1,3(2H)-dione (0.028 mol) and triphenyl phosphine (0.028 mol) in THF (200ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 hours. The solvent was evaporated till dryness. The residue was
 15 dissolved in CH₂Cl₂. The solution was acidified with HCl 3N, basified with NH₄OH and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (12g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 97/3/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 5.5g of intermediate
 20 (17) (57%).

Example A9

a) Preparation of

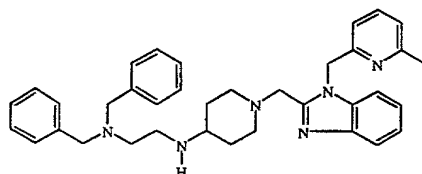


(interm. 18)

A mixture of 8-[[1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1,4,8-dioxo-8-azaspiro[4.5]decane (0.0196 mol) in HCl 6N (55ml) and H₂O (55ml) was

stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. Toluene was added. The mixture was poured out on ice, alkalized with a NaOH solution and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Part of this fraction was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.32g of intermediate (18) (91%).

b) Preparation of

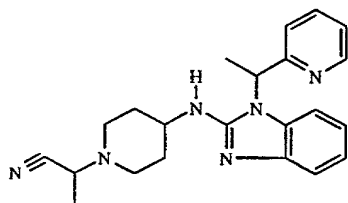


(interm. 19)

- 5 A mixture of intermediate (18) (0.008 mol) and *N,N*-dibenzylethylenediamine (0.01 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (0.5ml). After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. Yield: 5.39g of intermediate (19) (quant.).

Example A10

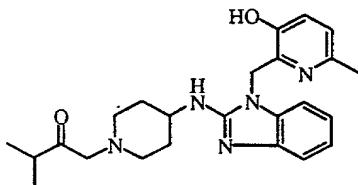
a) Preparation of



(interm. 20)

- 10 A mixture of (±)-*N*-(4-piperidiny)-1-[1-(2-pyridyl)ethyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine (0.026 mol), 2-chloropropanenitrile (0.039 mol) and K₂CO₃ (0.052 mol) in acetonitrile (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 8 hours. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (8.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 96/4; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions
- 15 were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 4.5g of intermediate (20) (46%).

b) Preparation of

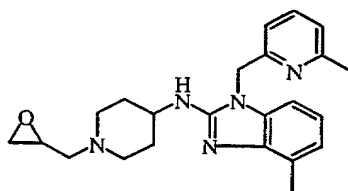


(interm. 22)

- A mixture of compound 49 (0.0164 mol), 1-bromo-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.03 mol) and K₂CO₃ (0.06 mol) in CH₃CN (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for several hours. H₂O was added. The solvent was evaporated. 4-Methyl-2-pentanone was added. The
- 20 organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 98/2). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.75g of intermediate (22) (40%).

Example A11

Preparation of

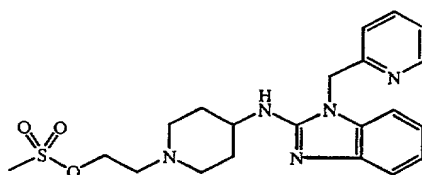


(interm. 21)

A mixture of compound 90 (0.015 mol), (chloromethyl)oxirane (0.008 mol) and Na_2CO_3 (1.59g) in 4-methyl-2-pentanone (150ml) was heated slowly to 100°C (to 40°C in 1 hour, 70°C in 1 hour), stirred at 100°C overnight, then stirred and refluxed for 20 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/(\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3)$ 95/5). Two fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated. Fraction 1 was crystallized from DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.18g of intermediate (21).

Example A12

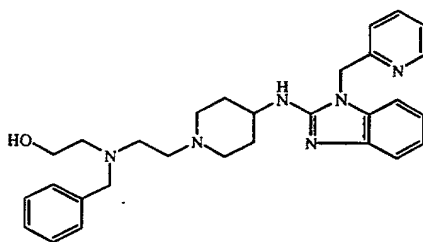
a) Preparation of



(interm. 23)

Methylsulfonyl chloride (0.0512 mol) was added dropwise at 0°C under N_2 flow to a mixture of 4-[[1-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidineethanol (0.0256 mol) and *N,N*-diethylethanamine (0.0512 mol) in CH_2Cl_2 (200ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 90 minutes. The solvent was evaporated till dryness.. Yielding: intermediate (23)

b) Preparation of

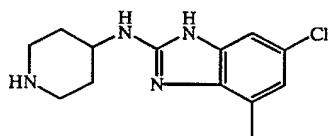


(interm. 24)

A mixture of intermediate (23) (0.028 mol), 2-[(phenylmethyl)amino]ethanol, (0.034 mol) and K_2CO_3 (0.112 mol) in CH_3CN (200ml) was stirred at 60°C for 4 hours. H_2O was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO_4), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ 97/3/0.5; 35-70 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 5.5g of intermediate (24) (41%).

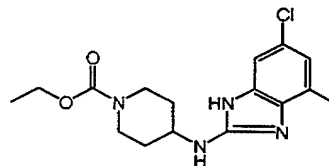
Example A13

Preparation of



(interm. 25)

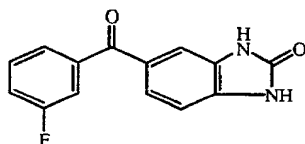
HCl 12N (165ml) was added to a mixture of



(interm. 36), prepared according to example A7c), (0.049 mol) in H₂O (165ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. The solvent was evaporated. HBr 48% (320ml) was added. The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and then stirred overnight. The solvent was evaporated. 2-Propanol was added and the solvent was evaporated again. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The mixture was decanted, taken up in H₂O/DIPE and then separated into its layers. CH₂Cl₂ was added to the aqueous layer. The mixture was alkalized with NH₄OH. 2-Propanol was added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 15g of intermediate (25).

Example A14

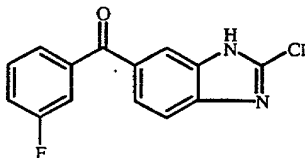
a) Preparation of



(interm. 26)

3,4-diaminophenyl-(3-fluorophenyl)methanone (0.056 mol) and urea (0.084 mol) were stirred at 150 à 160°C for 4 hours (melt) and then cooled. Water was added. The mixture was stirred at 50°C for a while and then cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, stirred in 2-propanone and dried. Yield: 11.4g of intermediate (26).

b) Preparation of



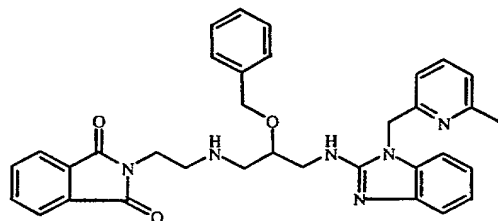
(interm. 27)

Phosphorus oxychloride (50ml) was added carefully to intermediate (26) (0.045 mol). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours and then was stood at room temperature over the weekend. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂/ice/K₂CO₃ solid. The mixture was separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The undissolved material was filtered off to give residue 1. The combined organic layer was dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated to give residue 2. Residue 1 and residue 2 were combined. Yield: 16.75g

of intermediate (27) (100%).

Example A15

Preparation of



(interm. 28)

A mixture of compound (341) (0.0025 mol), prepared according to B25a), 2-(2-bromoethyl)-1*H*-Isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (0.00275 mol) and K_2CO_3 (3g) in CH_3CN (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 and then washed with water. The organic layer was dried ($MgSO_4$), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $CH_2Cl_2/(CH_3OH/NH_3)$ 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: intermediate (28).

Example A16

a) 2, 4,5-trimethyloxazole (0.225mol) was stirred in CCl_4 (500mL) under N_2 -flow. Then 1-bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.225mol) and benzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added. This mixture was stirred and refluxed for 1hour under N_2 -flow. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice bath (ice/salt). The mixture was filtered. The filtrate was evaporated. Yield: 42.7g (<100%) of 5-(bromomethyl)-2,4-dimethyloxazole (intermediate 30).

b) Intermediate (30) (0.225 mol) was taken up in DMF (450ml). $Na[N(CH(=O))_2]$ (0.225 mol) was added portionwise and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 1hour and at room temperature overnight. The mixture was evaporated. Yield : 41g (100%) of *N*-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-*N*-formylformamide (intermediate 31).

c) A mixture of intermediate (31) (0.225 mol) in HCl 36% (120ml) and ethanol (500ml) was refluxed for 1hour and stirred overnight. The mixture was filtered off, the precipitate was washed with C_2H_5OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in ice water, alkalized with NaOH and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The mixture was separated and the organic layer was dried and evaporated. Yield : 28g (100%) of 2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolmethanamine (intermediate 32).

d) 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine (0.225 mol) and Na_2CO_3 (0.225 mol) were added to a mixture of intermediate (32) (0.225 mol) in ethanol (500ml) and the mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6hours. The mixture was evaporated and the residue was taken up in water and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 . The mixture was separated and the organic layer was

dried, filtered off and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel. The pure fractions were collected and evaporated. Yield : 27g (48%) of *N*-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3-nitro-2-pyridinamine (intermediate 33).

e) A mixture of intermediate (33) (0.1 mol) was hydrogenated in a thiophene solution 4% (3ml) and methanol (400ml) with Pd/C 5% (4g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (3eq), the catalyst was filtered off. The residue was evaporated and used without further purification. Yield : 21.8 g (100%) of *N*²-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (intermediate 34).

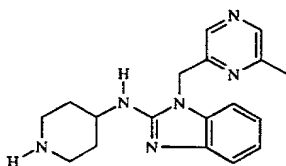
f) Intermediate (34) (0.1 mol) was dissolved in DMF (250ml). Ethyl 4-isothiocyanato-1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.1 mol) was added and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 20 hours. HgO (0.125 mol) and sulfur powder (few crystals) were added and the mixture was stirred at 75°C for 3hours 30minutes. The mixture was filtered over dicalite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in water/CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was separated, the organic layer was dried, filtered off and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent : CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH 95/5). The pure fractions were collected and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from DIPE and recrystallized from CH₃CN. Yield : 216.6277g (55.4%) of ethyl 4-[[3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-yl]amino-1-piperidinecarboxylate (intermediate 35).

20 Example A17

Cl-CH₂-C(=NH)-O-C₂H₅ (0.0625 mol) was added to a mixture of *N*²-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (0.05 mol) in acetic acid (150mL) and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature. The mixture was warmed up to 90°C and stirred for 10 minutes at this temperature. The mixture was evaporated at <50°C. The residue was taken up in water/CH₂Cl₂ + Na₂CO₃. The organic layer was separated, extracted with CH₂Cl₂, dried (MgSO₄) and filtered. The residue was taken up in DIPE + active charcoal and stirred for 1hour. The mixture was filtered and evaporated, Yield : 13.1 g (100%) of 2-(chloromethyl)-3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine (intermediate 29). Preparation of the final compounds

30 Example B1

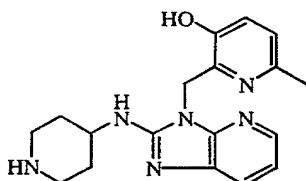
a) Preparation of



(compound 1)

A mixture of intermediate (2) (0.016 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (10ml) and 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours and then cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with DIPE and dried. The residue was taken up in H₂O, NH₃ and CH₃OH and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.8g of compound (1) (35%).

b) Preparation of

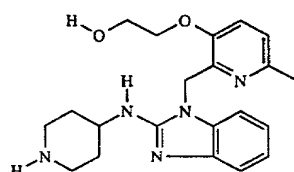


(compound 308)

A mixture of intermediate (10) (0.0054 mol) in HBr 48% (50 ml) was stirred and refluxed for 5 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and crystallized from ethanol. The solvent was evaporated and the fraction was purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over RP Hyperprep (eluent: (0.5% NH₄OAc in H₂O)/CH₃CN from 100/0 to 0/100). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.188 g of compound (308).

Example B2

a) Preparation of



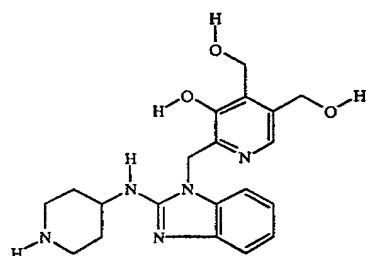
(compound 2)

HCl (1:3); H₂O (1:2)

A mixture of intermediate (3) (0.00622 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (10ml) and 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O, Na₂CO₃ and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in 2-propanol and DIPE and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt with 2-propanol/HCl. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. This fraction was converted into the free base and purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3). The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.65g of compound (2) (20%).

-59-

b) Preparation of



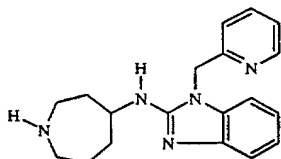
(compound 3)

HCl (1:3); H₂O (1:2)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3,5-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-9-(phenylmethoxy)-1*H*-[1,3]dioxepino[5,6-*c*]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.00552 mol) in HCl 10N (200ml) was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.58g of compound (3).

Example B3

Preparation of

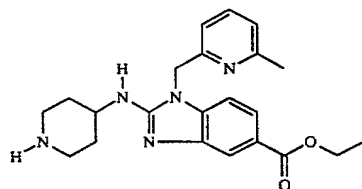


(compound 4)

A mixture of intermediate (4) (0.021 mol) and KOH (0.43 mol) in 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. H₂O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 6.9g of compound (4) (quant.).

Example B4

Preparation of

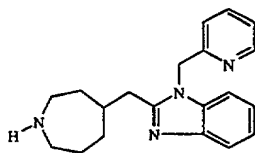


(compound 5)

A mixture of intermediate (6) (0.02 mol) in ethanol (120ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (2g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding a residue of 8g (100%). Part of this fraction (0.7g) was dissolved in ethanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3) with 2-propanol/HCl. DIPE was added. The mixture was stirred. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.65g of compound (5).

Example B5

Preparation of

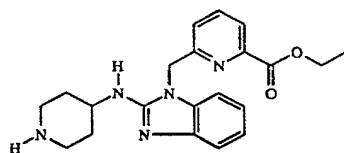


(compound 6)

A mixture of intermediate (9) (0.035 mol) in methanol (200ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours with Pd/C (1.5g) as a catalyst, then hydrogenation was continued at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours. After uptake of H₂ (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was
 5 evaporated. The residue (12g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 80/20/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.8g of compound (6) (34%).

Example B6

Preparation of

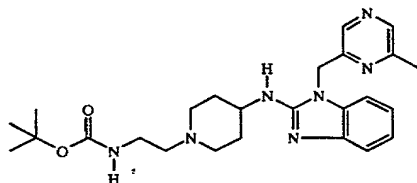


(compound 7)

A mixture of 6-[[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)methyl)-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-pyridine-
 10 carboxylic acid in HCl 36% (5ml) and ethanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. The solvent was evaporated. H₂O, NaHCO₃ and CH₂Cl₂ were added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.83g of
 15 compound (7).

Example B7

Preparation of

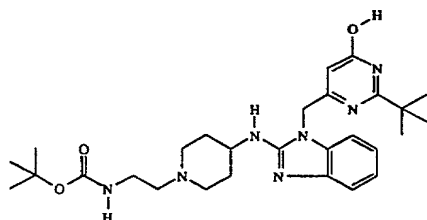


(compound 8)

A mixture of compound (1) (0.003 mol), 1,1-dimethylethyl (2-bromoethyl) carbamate (0.004 mol) and Na₂CO₃ (0.004 mol) in 2-butanone (100 ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled, washed with water and the layers were
 20 separated. The organic phase was washed with a NH₄Cl solution. The aqueous phase was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layers were dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: a residue of 1.18 g of compound (8) (84%).

Example B8

Preparation of

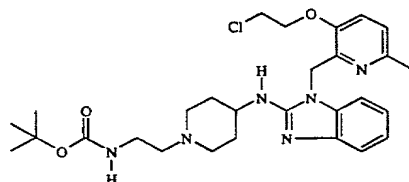


(compound 9)

Reaction under N₂ flow. NaH (0.01 mol) was added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyloxy]ethyl]carbamate (0.01 mol) in DMF p.a. dry (100ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. 6-chloromethyl-2-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-4-pyrimidinol (0.01 mol) in a small amount of DMF p.a. dry was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight and then cooled. H₂O (50ml) was added. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH₂Cl₂. The organic solution was washed with H₂O/HOAc, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, to give residue 1. The aqueous layer was taken up in HOAc and extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, to give residue 2. Residue 1 and 2 were combined and purified by column chromatography over RP 18 BDS (eluent: NH₄OAc (0.5% in H₂O)/ CH₃OH/CH₃CN 70/15/15, 0/50/50 and 0/0/100). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: compound (9).

Example B9

a) Preparation of

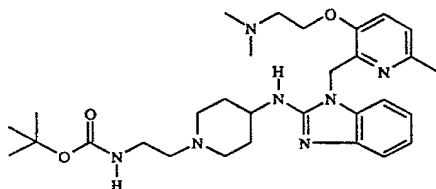


(compound 10)

Thionyl chloride (0.03 mol) was added to a mixture of (±)-6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridinemethanol (0.015 mol) in CH₂Cl₂ (100ml). Toluene was added and evaporated again. The residue was taken up in DMF (50ml) and then added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyloxy]ethyl]carbamate (0.015 mol) and NaH (0.06 mol) in DMF (200ml). The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H₂O and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 99/1). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in petroleum ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.55g of compound (10) (20%).

-62-

b) Preparation of

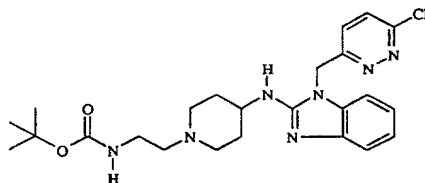


(compound 11)

A mixture of compound (10) (0.00147 mol) and $\text{NH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ gas (20g) in THF (100ml) was stirred at 125°C for 16 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/(\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3)$ 95/5). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.43g of compound (11) (53%).

Example B10

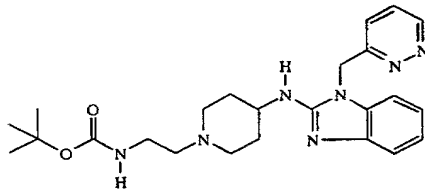
a) Preparation of



(compound 12)

1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.088 mol) and then dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added to a solution of 3-chloro-6-methylpyridazine (0.08 mol) in CCl_4 (mol. sieves) (200ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours and then filtered over dicalite. 1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.088 mol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added again. The mixture was stirred and refluxed overnight and filtered over dicalite. The solvent was evaporated at a temperature below 40°C. The residue was dissolved in DMF (70ml) and added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1H-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0214 mol) and NaH (0.0235 mol) in DMF (190ml), previously stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and at 40°C for 1 hour. The resulting mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. H_2O and CH_2Cl_2 were added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/(\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3)$ 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated. Yield: 1.21g of compound (12).

b) Preparation of

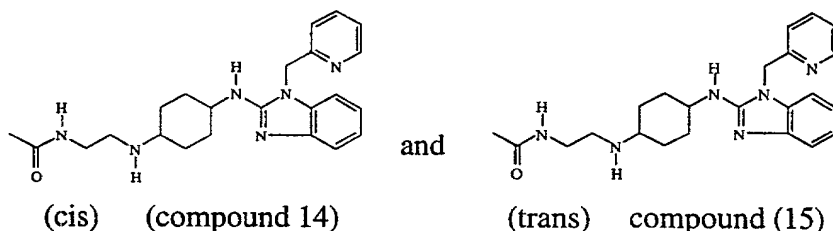


(compound 13)

A mixture of compound (12) (0.0025 mol), CaO (2g) and Pd/C (1g) in 1-butanethiol (2ml) and THF (100ml) was stirred at room temperature for the weekend. The solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1g of compound (13) (88%).

Example B11

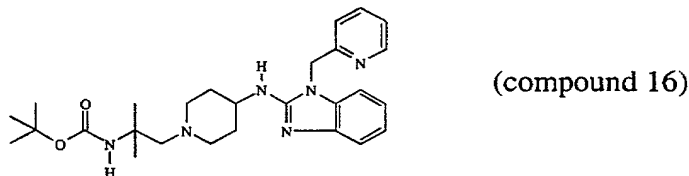
Preparation
of



- 5 A mixture of intermediate (15) (0.031 mol) and *N*-(2-aminoethyl)acetamide (0.093 mol) in methanol (300ml) was hydrogenated at 30°C under a 3 bar pressure for 12 hours with Pd/C (5g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH₃OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ CH₃OH/NH₄OH 92/8/0.5;
- 10 20-45 μm). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding a residue of 2.8g (22%) and 9g (71%). Parts of these fractions (0.6g; 0.8g) were crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.52g of compound (14); mp. 126°C and 0.53g of compound (15); mp. 200°C.

Example B12

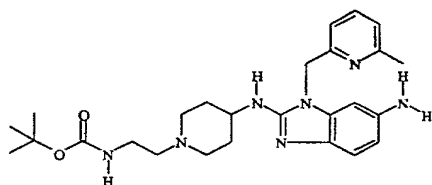
Preparation of



- 15 NaBH₃CN (0.048 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of *N*-4-piperidinyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrochloride (0.032 mol) and 1,1-dimethylethyl (1,1-dimethyl-2-oxoethyl)carbamate (0.032 mol) in methanol (100ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 hours and hydrolyzed at 5°C with ice water. Methanol was evaporated. The residue was extracted with CH₂Cl₂.
- 20 The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/ NH₄OH 95/5/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield : 2.2g of compound (16) (14%).

Example B13

Preparation of

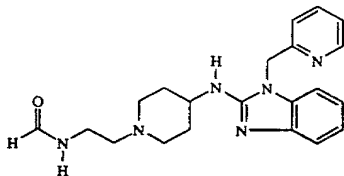


(compound 17)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-6-nitro-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0084 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated at 50°C with Pt/C 5% (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (1ml). After uptake of H₂ (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 99/1 to 97.5/2.5). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.3g of compound (17) (82%).

Example B14

Preparation of

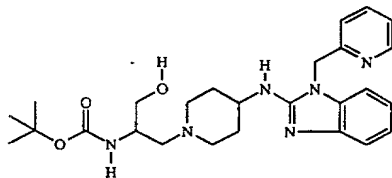


(compound 18)

A mixture of *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine (0.143 mol) in HCOOH (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 3 hours. The solvent was evaporated till dryness. The residue was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂. The mixture was basified with Na₂CO₃, filtered and the filtrate was evaporated till dryness. The residue (4.9g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 92/8/1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanone. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.8g of compound (18) (51%); mp. 146°C.

Example B15

Preparation of



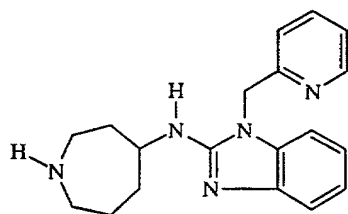
(compound 19)

LiAlH₄ (0.0065 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl [1-(methoxycarbonyl)-2-[4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0059 mol) in THF (30ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hour. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolyzed with ice water, filtered over celite and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (2.8g) was purified by column

chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ 92/8/0.5; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.55g of compound (19) (56%).

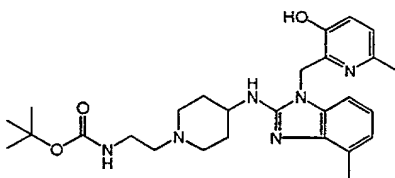
Example B16

a) Preparation of



(compound 290)

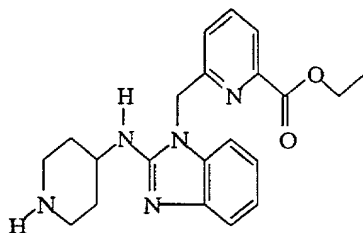
A mixture of



(0.021mol) in 2-propanol/HCl

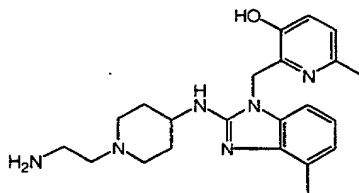
- 5 (29 ml) and 2-propanol (290 ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours and then cooled to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off and combined with analogously obtained fraction. The precipitate was dissolved at reflux in ethanol (150 ml), then allowed to crystallize out. The precipitate was filtered off and dried (45 °C, 16 hours, then air-dried for 30 minutes). Yield: 8.9 g (70%) of compound (290). Compound
- 10 (290) was converted into the free base according to art known procedures resulting in compound (355).

b) Preparation of



(compound 356) and

preparation of



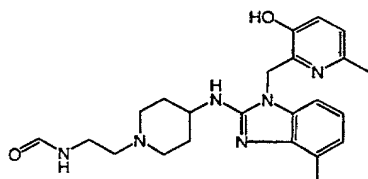
(compound 357).

Hydroxybutanedioate (1:1) Hydrate (1:2)

- Compound (355) (0.001 mol) was added to ethanol (6 ml; absolute ethanol) and heated to reflux temperature to give an homogeneous solution (I). Solution (I) was treated with butanedioic acid (0.118 g, 0.001 mol) and resulted in immediate salt formation. The
- 15 mixture was heated to reflux temperature, became homogeneous, then was allowed to

- cool to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off, and dried (vacuum, 50 °C, 24 hours). Yield: 0.40 g (78%) of compound (356). Solution (I) was treated with hydroxybutanedioic acid (0.134 g, 0.001 mol) and the mixture was heated to reflux temperature, became homogeneous, then was allowed to cool to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off and dried (vacuum, 50 °C, 24 hours). Yield: 0.46 g (87%) of compound (357).

c) Preparation of



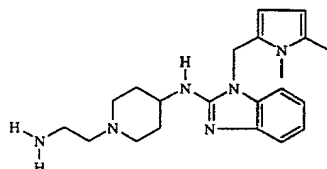
(compound 354)

- Compound (290) (0.000065 mol) was dissolved in water (3 ml). The mixture was stirred and alkalized with concentrated NH_4OH (400 μl , and 100 μl). CHCl_3 (20 ml) was added. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 10 minutes. More conc. NH_4OH (100 μl) was added and the mixture was stirred vigorously for 5 minutes. The organic layer was separated, then the alkaline layer was re-extracted once with CHCl_3 (5 ml). The combined organic layers were washed once with a saturated aqueous NaCl solution, then dried (MgSO_4), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was stirred in HCOOH (20 ml) until complete dissolution (= after 2 minutes). Acetic acid anhydride (0.00213 mol) was added dropwise over 1 minute and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature. After 24 hours, more acetic acid anhydride (50 μl) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. More acetic acid anhydride (50 μl) was added to the reaction mixture. The whole was stirred for 2 hours 15 minutes on a 60 °C oil-bath, then stood over the weekend at room temperature. More acetic acid anhydride (1000 μl) was added to the reaction mixture. The whole was stirred for 30 minutes on a 60-70 °C oil-bath, then stirred overnight at room temperature. Again, the reaction mixture was stirred for 2.5 hours at 60 °C. More acetic acid anhydride (100 μl) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 45 minutes at 60 °C, then stood overnight at room temperature. Water (100 μl) was added to decompose remaining acetic acid anhydride. The solvent was evaporated (in vacuo at 60 °C). Toluene was added to the residue, then evaporated again (in vacuo, 60 °C). Xylene was added, then evaporated (in vacuo at 60 °C) to give (x). To a sample, water (3 drops) was added. NH_4OH (10 μl) was added. Water (5 drops) was added and the mixture was shaken vigorously to give (y). (x) and (y) were dissolved in $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/(\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3)$ 84/12/4, then purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/(\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3)$ 84/12/4). The product fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. This fraction (0.185 g) was stirred in boiling

ethanol (± 10 ml), allowed to cool to room temperature, then Et₂O (10 ml) was added and the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. The precipitate was filtered off by suction, rinsed with Et₂O, then air-dried for 3 hours, then dried further (high vacuum, 2 hours at room temperature, then air-dried overnight at room temperature). Yield: 0.153 g of compound (354).

Example B17

Preparation of



(compound 21)

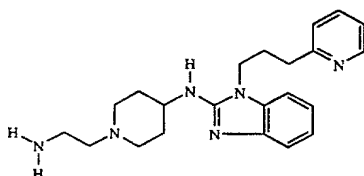
H₂O (1:1)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-(1,5-dimethyl-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.002 mol) and KOH (1g) in sec. butanol (25ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent was evaporated.

The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.57g of compound (21).

Example B18

Preparation of



(compound 22)

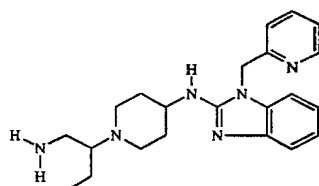
HCl (1:4); H₂O (1:2)

A mixture of 2-[2-[4-[[1-[3-(2-pyridyl)propyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1H-isoindole-1,3(2H)-dione (0.005 mol) in HCl 6N (120ml) and HOAc (60ml) was stirred and refluxed for 30 hours and then cooled on an ice bath. A NaOH solution was added carefully dropwise until pH > 7. The mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and then separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layer was washed with H₂O, separated again, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in a small amount of 2-propanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:4) with 2-propanol/HCl 6N. DIPE was added. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with DIPE and dried. Yield: 1.95g of compound (22) (70%).

Example B19

-68-

Preparation of

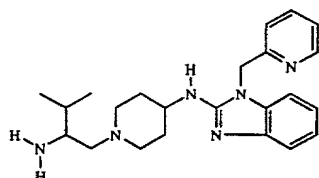


(compound 23)

- A mixture of intermediate (17) (0.01 mol) in hydrazine (5ml) and ethanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 . The organic solution was washed with H_2O , dried (MgSO_4), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (4.8g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ 89/10/1; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 51.7g of compound (23) (45%); mp. 112°C.

Example B20

Preparation of

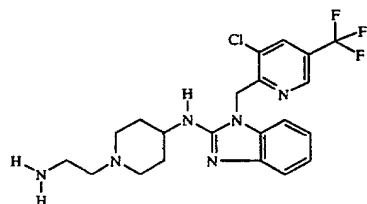


(compound 24)

- A mixture of 3-methyl-1-[4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-2-butanone (0.01 mol) and benzenemethanamine (0.031 mol) in methanol (50ml) was hydrogenated at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours with Pd/C (0.4g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H_2 (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH_3OH and CH_2Cl_2 and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ 93/7/1; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from pentane. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1g of compound (24) (21%); mp. 115°C.

Example B21

Preparation of



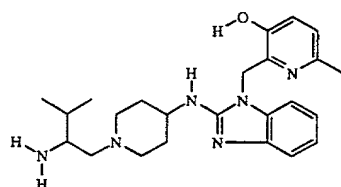
(compound 25)

- Reaction under N_2 atmosphere. Na_2CO_3 (0.250 g) was added to 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0028 mol) in DMF (10 ml). The mixture was stirred for 4 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was divided over 5 tubes. 2-Chloromethyl-3-chloro-5-trifluoropyridine

(0.100 g) was added to each tube and the resulting reaction mixture was stirred overnight at 50 °C. The mixture was acidified with HCl/2-propanol, then stirred for 3 hours at 90°C. The mixture was alkalized with NH₃/CH₃OH and the desired compound was isolated and purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over a Prochrom D.A.C.-column with Hypersil 'BDS' HS C18 (100 g, 8 µm, 100 Å; eluent gradient: ((0.5% NH₄OAc in H₂O)/CH₃OH/CH₃CN (0 min) 70/15/15, (10.31 min) 0/50/50, (16.32 min) 0/0/100, (16.33 min-end) 70/15/15). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.020 g of compound (25).

Example B22

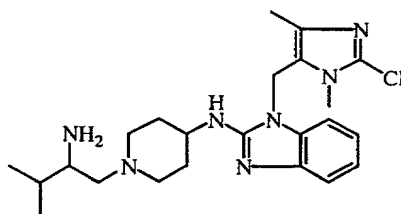
a) Preparation of



(compound 26)

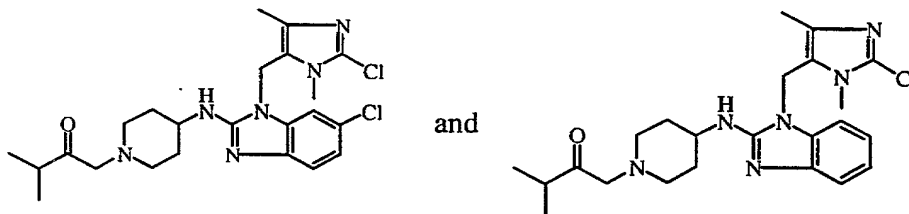
A mixture of 1-[4-[[1-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]-amino]-1-piperidiny]-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.0065 mol) in CH₃OH/NH₃ (300ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature with Rh/Al₂O₃ (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of CH₃OH/NH₃ (3ml). After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 95/5 to 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.52g of compound (26) (55%).

b) Preparation of



(compound 298)

A mixture
(0.6g) of



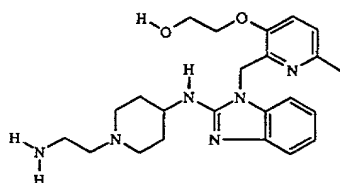
and

(prepared analogous to the procedure described in example A10b)) in NH₃/CH₃OH (100 ml) was hydrogenated for 16 hours at 50°C with Rh/C (0.5 g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (1 ml). After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over Kromasil C18 (100 Å; eluent: NH₄OAc 0.5%

H₂O/CH₃CN 75%, 25% CH₃OH to CH₃CN 100%). Two pure fraction groups were collected and their solvent was evaporated. Yield : 0.165 g of compound 298.

Example B23

Preparation of



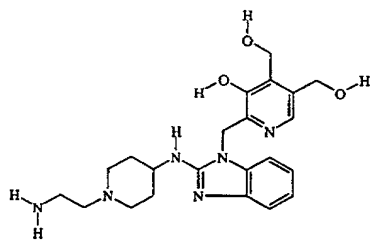
(compound 27)

HCl (1:3); H₂O (1:1)

A mixture of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[[6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-carbamate (0.0014 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (5ml) and 2-propanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and taken up in H₂O, Na₂CO₃ and CH₂Cl₂. The organic layer was separated. 2-Propanol/HCl (5ml) and 2-propanol (50ml) were added again. The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.18g of compound (27) (23%).

Example B24

Preparation of



(compound 28)

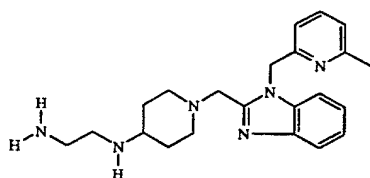
HCl (1:1)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[[3,5-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-9-(phenylmethoxy)-1H-[1,3]dioxepino[5,6-c]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.00213 mol) in HCl 10N (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.9g of compound (28).

Example B25

-71-

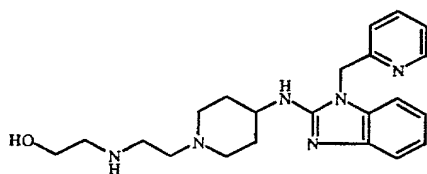
a) Preparation of



(compound 29)

A mixture of intermediate (19) (0.008 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C (1g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/ (CH₃OH/NH₃) 95/5, 93/7 to 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.81g of compound (29) (60%).

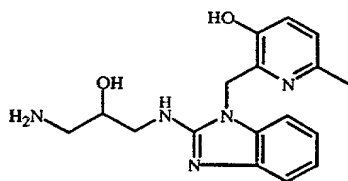
b) Preparation of



(compound 312)

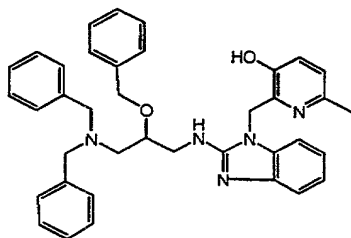
A mixture of intermediate (24) (0.011 mol) in methanol (100ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure overnight with Pd/C (2g) as a catalyst. The catalyst was recuperated and hydrogenation was continued at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 2 hours with Pd/C (2g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off, washed with CH₃OH and CH₂Cl₂ and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (4.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/CH₃OH/NH₄OH 85/15/1 and 56/40/4; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanol and diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.8g of compound (312) (40%).

c) Preparation of



(compound 313)

A mixture of



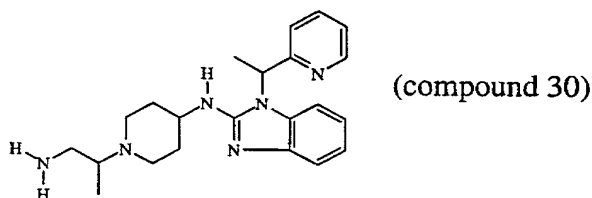
(0.016 mol), prepared

according to A5c), in methanol (250 ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (2 g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel

(eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/(\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3)$ 90/10). The product fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 4.2 g of compound (313).

Example B26

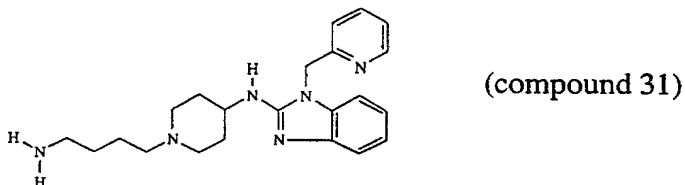
Preparation of



- 5 LiAlH_4 (0.014 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of intermediate (20) (0.012 mol) in THF (50ml). The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and then stirred at room temperature for 48 hours. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolyzed with ice water, filtered over celite, washed with EtOAc and the filtrate was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO_4), filtered and
- 10 the solvent was evaporated. The residue (3g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ 87/13/1; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.75g of compound (30) (16%); mp. 85°C .

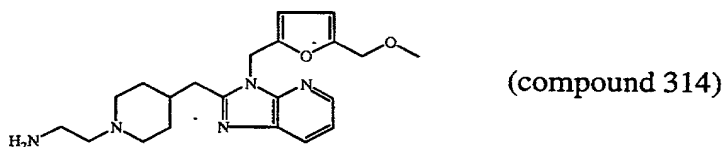
15 Example B27

a) Preparation of



- A mixture of 4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinebutanenitrile (0.01 mol) in $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3$ (80ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure overnight with Raney Nickel (3.8g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H_2 (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was evaporated.
- 20 The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.9g of compound (31) (76%); mp. 94°C .

b) Preparation of



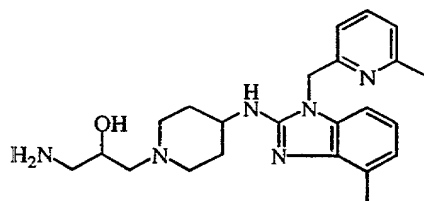
A mixture of 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidiny]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-2-furanmethanol (0.0068 mol) in $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}/\text{NH}_3$ (300 ml) was

hydrogenated at 20 °C with Raney Nickel (1 g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H₂ (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) from 95/5 to 90/10). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated.

- 5 The residue was repurified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 95/5). The purest fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up into HCl/2-propanol and DIPE was added. The resulting salt was filtered off and purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent
10 was evaporated. Yield: 0.2 g of compound (314).

Example B28

Preparation of

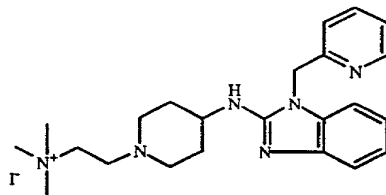


(compound 303)

A mixture of intermediate 21 (0.001 mol) in CH₃OH/NH₃ (100ml) was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours and at 100°C for 16 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH₂Cl₂/(CH₃OH/NH₃) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was
15 evaporated. The residue was dried. Yield: 0.11g of compound 303.

Example B29

Preparation of

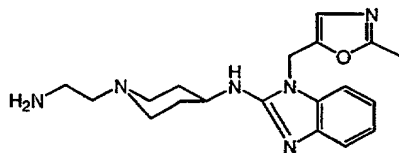


(compound 315)

- Iodomethane (0.00494 mol) was added at room temperature to a solution of compound (328) (0.004491 mol) in 2-propanone (17ml), and the reaction mixture was stirred at
20 room temperature for 1 hour. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. The residue (1.6g) was crystallized from 2-propanone. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.5g of compound (315) (64%).

Example B30

Preparation of

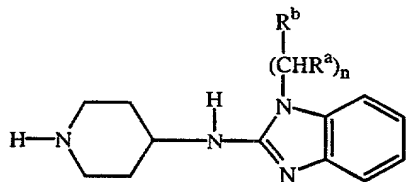


(compound 316)

Hydrochloride (1:3) Hydrate (1:1)

Compound (317) (0.0027 mol) was dissolved in ethanol (50ml). The mixture was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3) with 2-propanol/HCl. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.68g of compound (316).

Tables 1 to 17 list the compounds of formula (I') and the compounds of group (I'') which were prepared according to one of the above examples.

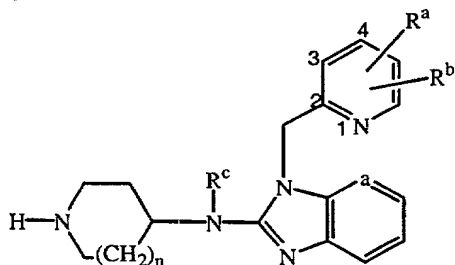
10 Table 1

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	R ^a	R ^b	Physical data
32	B1a	1	H	1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl	H ₂ O (1:2)
33	B1a	1	H	1,4-dimethyl-5-[-COOC ₂ H ₅]-1H-imidazol-2-yl	HCl (1:3)
34	B1a	1	H	2-bromo-5-pyridyl	
35	B1a	1	CH ₃	2-pyrazinyl	
36	B1a	1	ethyl	2-pyrazinyl	
37	B1a	1	H	2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2); mp. >160°C
38	B1a	1	CH ₃	2-pyridyl	
39	B1a	2	H	2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
40	B1b	2	H	2-pyridyl	
41	B1b	3	H	2-pyridyl	HBr (1:3)
42	B1a	0	-	2-pyrimidinyl	
43	B1a	1	H	2-pyrimidinyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
44	B1a	1	H	3,5,6-trimethyl-2-pyrazinyl	
45	B1a	1	H	3-[C ₂ H ₅ -O-(CH ₂) ₂ -O]-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:3)
46	B1a	1	H	3-amino-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	R ^a	R ^b	Physical data
47	B1a	1	H	3-amino-2-pyridyl	
48	B1a	1	H	3-hydroxy-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
49	B1a	1	H	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:3)
50	B1a	1	H	3-hydroxy-6-pyridaziny	HCl (1:2); H ₂ O (1:1)
51	B1a	1	H	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
52	B1a	1	H	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
53	B1a	1	H	3-methyl-2-pyraziny	
3	B2b	1	H	3-OH-4,5-(-CH ₂ -OH) ₂ -2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
54	B1a	1	H	3-pyridaziny	
55	B3	1	H	1,5-(CH ₃) ₂ -1H-pyrrol-2-yl	
56	B1a	1	H	4,6-dimethyl-2-pyridyl	
57	B1a	1	H	4-chloro-2-pyridyl	
58	B1a	1	H	4-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
59	B1a	1	H	4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
60	B1a	1	H	4-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
61	B1a	1	H	4-pyridyl	
62	B1a	1	H	4-pyrimidiny	
63	B1a	1	H	5-chloro-1-methyl-1H-imidazol-2-yl	
64	B1a	1	H	5-methyl-2-pyraziny	HCl (1:1)
65	B1a	1	H	5-methyl-2-pyraziny	
66	B1a	1	H	6-(-CH ₂ -O-CH ₃)-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2); H ₂ O (1:3)
67	B1a	1	H	6-(hydroxymethyl)-2-pyridyl	
68	B1a	1	H	6-[-CO-N(CH ₃) ₂]-2-pyridyl	
69	B1a	1	H	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2)
70	B1a	1	H	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	
71	B1a	1	H	6-chloro-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2)
72	B1a	1	H	6-HOOC-2-pyridyl	
73	B1a	1	CH ₃	6-hydroxymethyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
74	B1a	1	H	6-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
1	B1a	1	H	6-methyl-2-pyraziny	
75	B1a	1	CH ₃	6-methyl-2-pyraziny	
2	B2a	1	H	6-methyl-3-[-O-(CH ₂) ₂ -OH]-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
76	B1a	1	H	6-methyl-3-[-O-(CH ₂) ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂]-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)

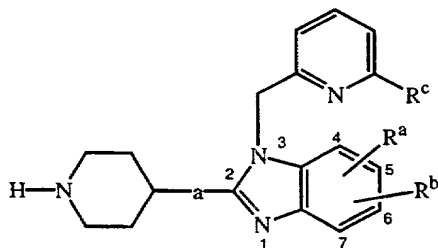
Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	R ^a	R ^b	Physical data
7	B6	1	H	6-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)-2-pyridyl	

Table 2



Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
78	B1a	1	CH	H	H	CH ₃	-
4	B3	2	CH	H	H	H	-
81	B16	1	CH	H	H	-CH ₂ -phenyl	-
308	B1b	1	N	3-OH	6-CH ₃	H	-

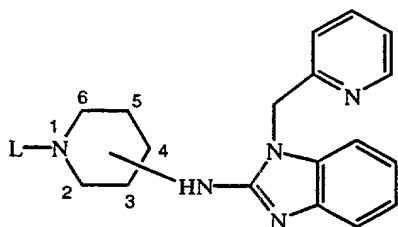
5 Table 3



Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
82	B4	CH ₂	5-OCH ₃	6-OCH ₃	H	
83	B1b	NH	5-Cl	6-Cl	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
84	B1b	NH	5-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
85	B1b	NH	4-Cl	H	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
86	B1b	NH	7-Cl	H	CH ₃	HBr (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
87	B1b	NH	6-NO ₂	H	CH ₃	HBr (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
88	B1b	NH	7-CH ₃	H	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
89	B1b	NH	5-NO ₂	H	CH ₃	HBr (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
90	B1b	NH	7-CH ₃	H	CH ₃	
91	B1b	NH	4-CH ₃	H	CH ₃	HBr (1:3)
92	B1b	NH	4-CH ₃	H	CH ₃	

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
93	B1b	NH	5-CF ₃	H	CH ₃	
94	B1b	NH	6-CF ₃	H	CH ₃	
95	B1b	NH	6-Cl	H	CH ₃	
96	B1b	NH	5-Cl	H	CH ₃	
5	B4	NH	6-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)	H	CH ₃	
97	B4	NH	6-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)	H	CH ₃	
98	B4	NH	6-(-CH ₂ -OH)	H	CH ₃	
99	B4	NH	6-(-CH ₂ -OH)	H	CH ₃	
100	B1a	CH[N(CH ₃) ₂]	H	H	CH ₃	
						HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
						HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
						HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)

Table 4



Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	L	Physical data
101	B4	4	3-piperidinyl	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
102	B4	3	H	
18	B14	4	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH-CHO	mp. 146°C
103	B7	4		
104	B16	4		HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 226°C
105	B16	4	-CH ₂ -C(CH ₃) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 195°C
106	B16	4	-CH ₂ -CH(CH ₂ OH)-NH ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 200°C
23	B19	4	-CH(C ₂ H ₅)-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 112°C
107	B19	4	-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-NH ₂	(A); mp. 106°C
108	B19	4	-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-CH(C ₆ H ₅)-NH ₂	(B); mp. 98°C
109	B19	4	2-aminocyclohexyl	mp. 116°C
110	B19	4	-CH(phenylmethyl)-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 168°C
111	B19	4	-CH[C(CH ₃) ₃]-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 133°C
112	B19	4	-CH[CH ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂]-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 112°C
113	B19	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-phenyl	mp. 128°C

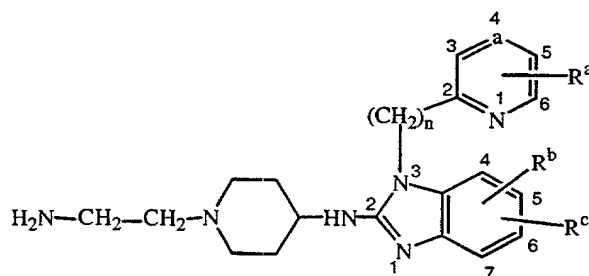
Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	L	Physical data
114	B19	4	-CH[CH ₂ -(1-piperidinyl)]-CH ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4); mp. 203°C
115	B19	4	-CH ₂ -CH(cyclopropyl)-NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 84°C
24	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH[CH(CH ₃) ₂]-NH ₂	mp. 115°C
116	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(CH ₃)-NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1)
117	B20	4	-CH(CH ₃)-CH(CH ₃)-NH ₂	(B); mp. 114°C
118	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(C ₂ H ₅)-NH ₂	mp. 140°C
119	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(cycloC ₆ H ₁₁)-NH ₂	mp. 134°C
120	B20	4	-CH(CH ₃)-CH(CH ₃)-NH ₂	(A); HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:4); mp. 214°C
121	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH ₂ -CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 124°C
122	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₃ -CH ₃	mp. 142°C
123	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ -CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 152°C
124	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ -CH ₃	mp. 146°C
125	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₇ -CH ₃	mp. 136°C
126	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ -phenyl	mp. 136°C
127	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH ₂ -C(CH ₃) ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 244°C
128	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃)(C ₂ H ₅)	(A); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 80°C
129	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃)(C ₂ H ₅)	(B); mp. 90°C
130	B20	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(CH ₂) ₂ -(4-methoxyphenyl)	mp. 100°C
131	B1a	4	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-(4-piperidinyl)	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 269°C
31	B27a	4	-(CH ₂) ₄ -NH ₂	mp. 94°C
132	B27a	4	-CH(CH ₃)-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 142°C
133	B27a	3	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 90°C
134	B16	4	-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. >250°C
328	B7	4	-(CH ₂) ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂	-
327	B7	4	-(CH ₂) ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3); mp. 180°C

* = position piperidinyl

(A) indicates the first isolated stereoisomeric form

(B) indicates the second isolated stereoisomeric form

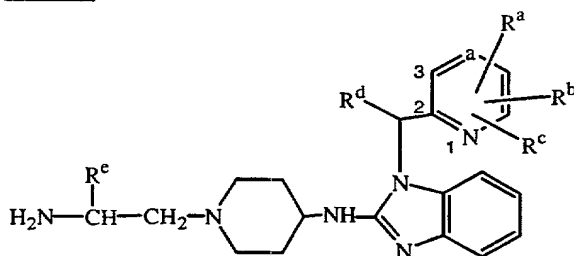
Table 5



Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
135	B1a	1	CH	6-[-COOCH(CH ₃) ₂]	H	H	
136	B1a	1	CH	6-[-COOC ₂ H ₅]	H	H	
137	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₂ OH	H	H	
138	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-Cl	6-Cl	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
139	B16	1	N	3-CH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
20	B16	1	N	6-CH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
140	B16	1	N	5-CH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
141	B16	2	CH	H	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
142	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
143	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	4-Cl	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
144	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	7-Cl	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
145	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-NO ₂	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
146	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-NH ₂	H	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:2)
147	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-NO ₂	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
148	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-NH ₂	H	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:1)
149	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	
151	B16	1	CH	6-Cl	H	H	
153	B16	1	CH	6-Br	H	H	
154	B16	1	CH	6-OH	H	H	
155	B16	1	CH	6-OCH ₃	H	H	
156	B16	1	CH	4-Cl	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
157	B16	1	CH	4-OCH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
158	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₂ OCH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
159	B16	1	N	5-COOC ₂ H ₅	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
160	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
161	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-COOC ₂ H ₅	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
162	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-CH ₂ OH	H	H ₂ O (1:1)
163	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-CF ₃	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
164	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-CF ₃	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
165	B16	1	CH	6-CON(CH ₃) ₂	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
166	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-Cl	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
22	B18	3	CH	H	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
167	B27a	1	CH	6-CH ₃	H	H	
305	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	H	-
306	B16	1	CH	6-CH ₃	6-Cl	H	HCl (1:4)

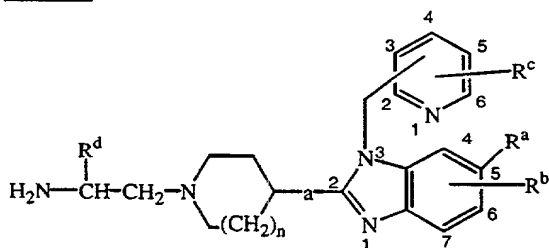
Table 6



Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	R ^d	R ^e	Physical data
168	B27a	CH ₃ -OH	H	H	H	H	H	-
169	B1a	CH ₃ -[O-(CH ₂) ₂ -N(CH ₃) ₂]	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	H	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:2)
152	B16	CH ₃ -H	H	H	H	CH ₃	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
170	B20	CH ₃ -3-NH ₂	H	H	H	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
171	B20	N	5-CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	mp. 175°C
172	B20	N	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	CH ₃	mp. 126°C
173	B20	N	3-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	H	CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3); mp. 208°C
174	B20	N	3-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 124°C
175	B16	N	H	H	H	CH ₃	H	HCl (1:3)
176	B16	N	3-CH ₃	5-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); 2-propanolate (1:1)
177	B16	N	H	H	H	ethyl	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
178	B16	N	6-CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
179	B16	CH	4-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
180	B16	CH	6-Cl	H	H	CH ₃	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
181	B16	CH	3-OH	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	R ^d	R ^e	Physical data
182	B16	CH	3-OCH ₃	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
183	B16	CH	6-CH ₂ OH	H	H	CH ₃	H	
184	B16	CH	3-[O-(CH ₂) ₂ -OC ₂ H ₅]	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	
185	B16	CH	3-OCH ₂ CH ₂ Cl	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
186	B20	CH	H	H	H	CH ₃	CH ₃	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:3); mp. 170°C
187	B20	N	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O(1:3); mp. 200°C
188	B20	CH	H	H	H	CH ₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 233°C
189	B20	N	5-CH ₃	H	H	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 114°C
190	B20	CH	H	H	H	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	mp. 50°C
25	B21	CH	3-Cl	5-CF ₃	H	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O(1:1)
26	B22a	CH	3-OH	6-CH ₃	H	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	
27	B23	CH	3-O-(CH ₂) ₂ -OH	6-CH ₃	H	H	H	
28	B24	CH	4-CH ₂ OH	3-OH	5-CH ₂ OH	H	H	HCl (1:1)
192	B27a	CH	6-CH ₃	H	H	CH ₃	H	mp. 142°C
299	B16	CH	3-CN	H	H	H	H	
300	B20	CH	4-OCH ₃	3-OCH ₃	H	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	
301	B16	CH	3-NH-SO ₂ -phenyl	6-Cl	H	H	H	mp. 161°C
307	B20	CH	5-OCH ₃	6-OCH ₃	H	H	CH(CH ₃) ₂	C ₂ H ₂ O ₄ (2:7); mp. 90°C

Table 7

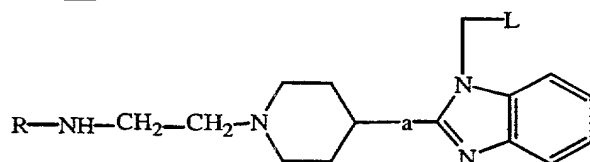


Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	*	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	R ^d	Physical data
193	B16	2	2	CH ₂	H	H	H	H	ethanedioate (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 125°C
194	B22b	1	2	NH	Cl	H	6-CH ₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	ethanedioate (2:7); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 170°C
195	B22b	1	2	NH	H	7-CH ₃	6-CH ₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	
196	B16	2	2	NH	H	H	H	H	

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	*	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	R ^d	Physical data
197	B16	1	2	N(CH ₃)	H	H	H	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
198	B16	1	2	N(CH ₂ -phenyl)	H	H	H	H	
199	B27a	0	2	NH	H	H	H	H	
200	B1a	1	2	CH ₂	OCH ₃	6-OCH ₃	H	H	
201	B1a	1	3	NH	H	H	6-Br	H	HBr (1:4); H ₂ O (1:4)
202	B16	1	4	NH	H	H	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
296	B22b	1	2	NH	CH ₃	H	6-CH ₃	CH(CH ₃) ₂	-

* = position pyridyl

Table 8

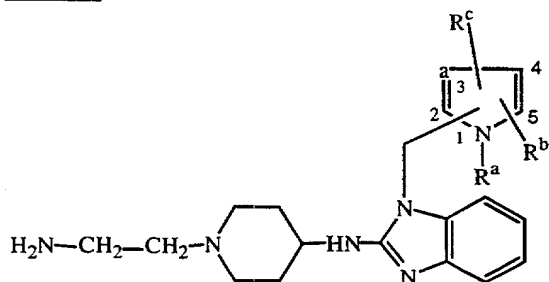


Co. No.	Ex. No.	L	a	R	Physical data
203	B16	4-pyrimidinyl	NH	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
204	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
205	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	H	
206	B16	3-pyridazinyl	NH	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
207	B16	4,6-dimethoxy-2-pyrimidinyl	NH	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
208	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
209	B16	6-methyl-2-pyridyl	CH[N(CH ₃) ₂]	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
210	B7	6-methyl-2-pyridyl	CH[N(CH ₃) ₂]	-COOC(CH ₃) ₃	
211	B25a	2-pyridyl	NH	CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); mp. 224°C
212	B27a	2-[C(CH ₃) ₃]-6-OH-4-pyrimidinyl	NH	H	
320	B30	2-pyridinyl	NH	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
319	B27a	2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	H	
329	B16	2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl	NH	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
333	B16	5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl	NH	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
317	B27a	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	H	mp. 115°C; H ₂ O (1:1)
323	B27a	4-thiazolyl	NH	H	
326	B16	5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl	NH	H	HCl (1:3)

-83-

Co. No.	Ex. No.	L	a	R	Physical data
332	B16	2-(hydroxymethyl)-5-oxazolyl	NH	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
331	B16	3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl	NH	H	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
324	B16	2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl	CH ₂	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); propanolate (1:1)
325	B27a	2-methyl-4-thiazolyl	CH ₂	H	
318	B27a	2-methyl-3-furanyl	NH	H	mp. 142°C
312	B25b	2-pyridinyl	NH	CH ₂ -CH ₂ OH	mp. 151°C
316	B30	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)

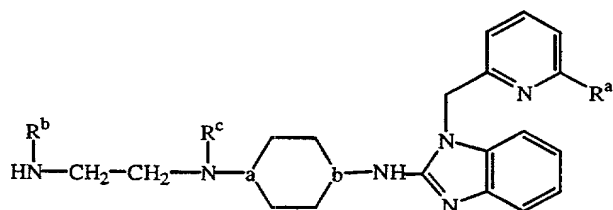
Table 9



Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	a	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
213	B16	2	N	CH ₂ C ₆ H ₅	H	H	HCl (1:4)
214	B16	5	N	H	4-CH ₃	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
215	B16	5	N	CH ₃	4-CH ₃	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
216	B16	2	N	CH ₃	5-COOC ₂ H ₅	4-CH ₃	HCl (1:4)
217	B16	2	N	CH ₃	5-Cl	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
218	B16	5	N	2-propyl	2-SCH ₃	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
219	B16	5	N	C ₂ H ₅	2-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
220	B16	5	N	CH ₃	2-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
21	B17	2	CH	CH ₃	5-CH ₃	H	H ₂ O (1:1)
221	B27a	2	CH	CH ₃	5-COOC ₂ H ₅	H	
222	B27a	2	CH	CH ₃	5-COOC ₂ H ₅	4-Br	

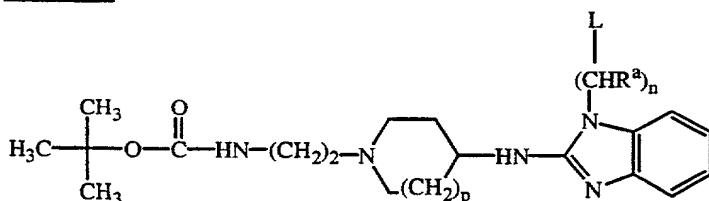
* position monocyclic heterocycle

Table 10



Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	b	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	Physical data
14	B11	CH	CH	H	COCH ₃	H	(cis); mp. 126
15	B11	CH	CH	H	COCH ₃	H	(trans); mp. 200
223	B16	CH	CH	H	H	H	(trans); HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 210
29	B25a	CH	N	CH ₃	H	H	
224	B25a	CH	N	CH ₃	H	CH ₃	HCl (1:5); H ₂ O (1:3)

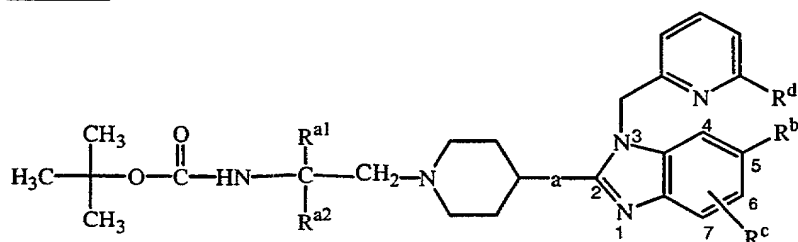
Table 11



Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	p	R ^a	L	Physical data
225	B7	1	1	H	6-chloro-2-pyridyl	
8	B7	1	1	H	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
226	B7	1	2	H	2-pyridyl	
227	B7	1	1	H	5-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
228	B7	1	1	CH ₃	2-pyridyl	
229	B7	1	2	H	2-pyridyl	
230	B7	1	1	H	4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl	
231	B7	1	1	H	3-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
232	B7	2	1	H	2-pyridyl	
233	B7	1	1	H	1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl	
234	B7	1	1	H	4-pyrimidinyl	
235	B7	0	1	-	2-pyrimidinyl	
236	B7	1	1	H	6-(hydroxymethyl)-2-pyridyl	
237	B7	1	1	H	1,4-dimethyl-5-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)-1H-imidazol-2-yl	

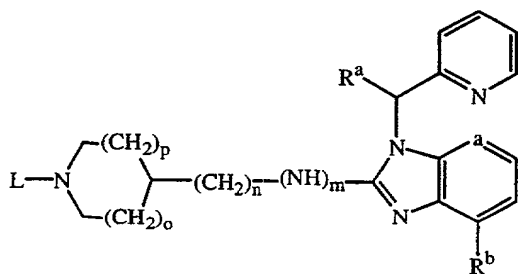
Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	p	R ^a	L	Physical data
238	B7	1	1	CH ₃	2-pyrazinyl	H ₂ O (1:1)
239	B7	1	1	H	3,5,6-trimethyl-2-pyrazinyl	
240	B7	1	1	Ethyl	2-pyrazinyl	
241	B7	1	1	CH ₃	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
242	B7	1	1	H	5-chloro-1-methyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-2-yl	
243	B7	1	1	H	4,6-dimethyl-2-pyridyl	
244	B7	1	1	H	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	
245	B7	1	1	H	6-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)-2-pyridyl	
246	B7	1	1	H	1,5-dimethyl-2-pyrrolyl	
247	B7	1	1	H	6-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
248	B7	1	1	H	4-chloro-2-pyridyl	
249	B7	1	1	H	4-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
250	B7	1	1	H	2-pyrimidinyl	
251	B7	1	1	H	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
252	B7	1	1	H	6-methyl-3-(-O-C ₂ H ₄ -O-C ₂ H ₅)-2-pyridyl	
253	B7	1	1	CH ₃	6-hydroxymethyl-2-pyridyl	
254	B7	1	1	H	6-bromo-3-pyridyl	
9	B8	1	1	H	2-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-6-hydroxy-4-pyrimidinyl	
255	B8	1	1	H	1-(phenylmethyl)-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-2-yl	
256	B8	1	1	H	1-(2-propyl)-2-(-S-CH ₃)-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	
257	B8	1	1	CH ₃	6-chloro-2-pyridyl	
258	B8	1	1	H	1-ethyl-2,4-dimethyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	
259	B8	1	1	H	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
260	B8	1	1	H	4,6-dimethoxy-2-pyrimidinyl	
261	B8	1	1	H	5-(-COOC ₂ H ₅)-2-pyrazinyl	
262	B8	1	1	H	1,2,4-trimethyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	
10	B9a	1	1	H	3-(-O-C ₂ H ₄ Cl)-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
263	B9a	1	1	H	6-(-CH ₂ -O-CH ₃)-2-pyridyl	
11	B9b	1	1	H	3-[-O-C ₂ H ₄ -N(CH ₃) ₂]-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
12	B10a	1	1	H	6-chloro-3-pyridazinyl	
13	B10b	1	1	H	3-pyridazinyl	
330	B7	1	1	H	2-methyl-4-methoxycarbonyl-5-oxazolyl	

Table 12



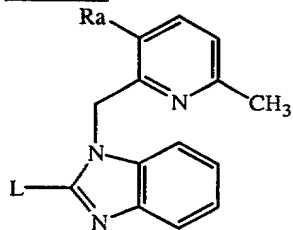
Co. No.	Ex. No.	R ^{a1} , R ^{a2}	R ^b	R ^c	a	R ^d	Physical data
264	B7	H, H	OCH ₃	6-OCH ₃	CH ₂	H	H ₂ O (1:1)
265	B7	H, H	H	H	N(CH ₃)	H	
266	B7	H, H	H	H	N(CH ₂ -C ₆ H ₅)	H	
267	B7	H, H	Cl	6-Cl	NH	CH ₃	
268	B7	H, H	CH ₃	6-CH ₃	NH	CH ₃	
269	B7	H, H	H	4-Cl	NH	CH ₃	
270	B7	H, H	H	7-Cl	NH	CH ₃	
271	B7	H, H	H	6-NO ₂	NH	CH ₃	
272	B7	H, H	NO ₂	H	NH	CH ₃	
273	B7	H, H	H	7-CH ₃	NH	CH ₃	
274	B7	H, H	H	4-CH ₃	NH	CH ₃	
275	B7	H, H	H	6-ethoxy-carbonyl	NH	CH ₃	
276	B7	H, H	H	6-hydroxy-methyl	NH	CH ₃	
277	B7	H, H	CF ₃	H	NH	CH ₃	
278	B7	H, H	H	6-CF ₃	NH	CH ₃	
279	B7	H, H	H	H	NH	-CO-N(CH ₃) ₂	
280	B7	H, H	Cl	H	NH	CH ₃	
16	B12	CH ₃ , CH ₃	H	H	NH	H	
17	B13	H, H	-NH ₂	H	NH	CH ₃	
281	B13	H, H	H	6-NH ₂	NH	CH ₃	
19	B15	-CH ₂ OH, H	H	H	NH	H	

Table 13



Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	m	o	p	a	R ^a	R ^b	L	Physical data
6	B5	1	0	2	1	CH	H	H	H	
283	B27a	1	0	1	1	N	H	H	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4), H ₂ O (1:1); 2-propanolate (1:1)
284	B27a	1	1	1	1	N	H	H	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:1)
285	B27a	1	1	0	2	CH	H	H	-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4), H ₂ O (1:1); mp. 205°C
286	B4	1	1	0	2	CH	H	H	H	
30	B26	0	1	1	1	CH	CH ₃	H	-CH(CH ₃)-CH ₂ -NH ₂	mp. 85°C

Table 14



Co. No.	Ex. No.	R _a	L	Physical data
288	B25a	H		
289	B4	H		
309	B19	H	-NH-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH ₂	HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:2)
347	B16	H	-NH-CH(CH ₃)-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl(1:4); 2-propanolate (1:1)
345	B19	H	-N(CH ₃)-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH-(CH ₂) ₂ -NH ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
346	B19	H		HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)

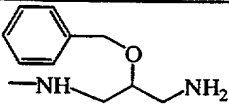
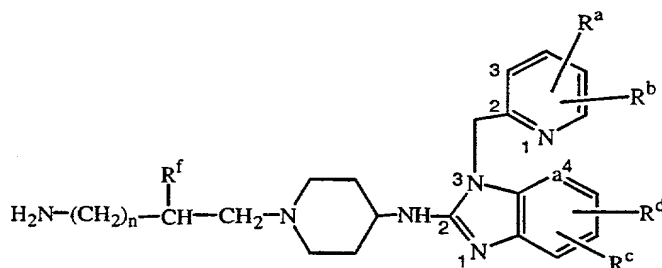
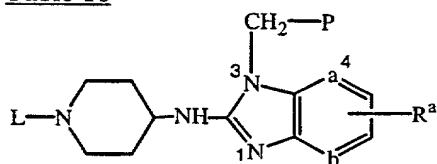
Co. No.	Ex. No.	R _a	L	Physical data
341	B25a	H		HCl (1:3); H ₂ O (1:1)
313	B25c	OH	-NHCH ₂ CH(OH)CH ₂ NH ₂	

Table 15



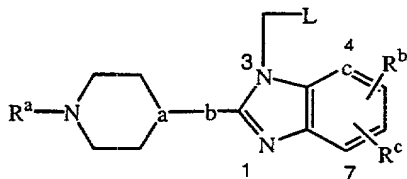
Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	n	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	R ^d	R ^f	Physical data
290	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:4)
291	B22b	N	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	-
292	B22b	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	CH ₃	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:3)
293	B22b	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	-
195	B22b	CH	0	6-CH ₃	H	7-CH ₃	H	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	-
303	B28	CH	1	6-CH ₃	H	7-CH ₃	H	OH	H ₂ O (1:1)
304	B22b	CH	0	6-CH ₃	H	6-CH ₃	H	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	-
342	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	5-Cl	7-CH ₃	H	HCl (1:4), 2-propanolate (1:1)
348	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	5-Br	7-CH ₃	H	HCl (1:4)
351	B22b	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	H	CH-(CH ₃) ₂	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:1)
340	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
344	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	4-CH ₃	6-Cl	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:4)
349	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	5-(4-fluoro-benzoyl)	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
350	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	6-(4-fluoro-benzoyl)	H	H	HCl (1:4); H ₂ O (1:2)
355	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	H	
356	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	H	C ₄ H ₆ O ₄ (1:1); H ₂ O(1:1)
357	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	H	C ₄ H ₆ O ₅ (1:1); H ₂ O(1:2)
353	B16	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH ₃	7-CH ₃	H	H	HCl(1:4); H ₂ O(1:5)

Table 16



Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	b	R ^a	L	P	Physical data
295	B22b	CH	CH	5-Cl	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃) ₂		H ₂ O (1:1)
297	B22b	CH	CH	5-Cl	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃) ₂		
298	B22b	CH	CH	H	-CH ₂ -CH(NH ₂)-CH(CH ₃) ₂		
310	B1b	CH	N	H	H		HBr (1:3).H ₂ O (1:1).C ₂ H ₆ O (1:1)
302	B1a	CH	CH	5-Cl	H		
321	B27a	N	CH	H	-CH ₂ -CH ₂ -NH ₂	2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl	
339	B8	N	CH	7-CH ₃	-C(=O)-O-CH ₂ -CH ₃		mp. 171°C
336	B9b	CH	CH	H	-C(=O)-O-C(CH ₃) ₃		
337	B25a	CH	CH	H	-C(=O)-O-CH ₂ -CH ₃		
352	B7	CH	CH	7-CH ₃	-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH-C(=O)OC(CH ₃) ₃		.HCl(1:4)
354	B16	CH	CH	7-CH ₃	-(CH ₂) ₃ -NH-CH=O		

Table 17



Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	b	c	R ^a	R ^b	R ^c	L	Physical data
343	B1b	CH	NH	CH	H	5-Br	7-CH ₃	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl	HBr (1:3)
338	B1b	CH	NH	CH	H	H	7-CH ₃	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl	
335	B20	N	NH	CH	$\text{---CH}_2\text{---CH(CH}_3)_2\text{---NH}_2$	H	H	2-pyridinyl	mp. 198°C
334	B27a	N	NH	CH	$\text{---(CH}_2)_2\text{---NH}_2$	H	H	2-pyridinyl	mp. 186
322	B27a	N	CH ₂	N	$\text{---(CH}_2)_2\text{---NH}_2$	H	H	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	
314	B27b	CH	CH ₂	N	$\text{---(CH}_2)_2\text{---NH}_2$	H	H	5-methoxymethyl-2-furanyl	

5 C. Pharmacological example

Example C1 : In vitro screening for activity against Respiratory Syncytial Virus.

The percent protection against cytopathology caused by viruses (antiviral activity or IC₅₀) achieved by tested compounds and their cytotoxicity (CC₅₀) were both calculated from dose-response curves. The selectivity of the antiviral effect is represented by the selectivity index (SI), calculated by dividing the CC₅₀ (cytotoxic dose for 50% of the cells) by the IC₅₀ (antiviral activity for 50 % of the cells).

Automated tetrazolium-based colorimetric assays were used for determination of IC₅₀ and CC₅₀ of test compounds. Flat-bottom, 96-well plastic microtiter trays were filled with 180 µl of Eagle's Basal Medium, supplemented with 5 % FCS (0% for FLU) and 20 mM Hepes buffer. Subsequently, stock solutions (7.8 x final test concentration) of compounds were added in 45 µl volumes to a series of triplicate wells so as to allow simultaneous evaluation of their effects on virus- and mock-infected cells. Five five-fold dilutions were made directly in the microtiter trays using a robot system. Untreated virus controls, and HeLa cell controls were included in each test. Approximately 100 TCID₅₀ of Respiratory Syncytial Virus was added to two of the three rows in a volume of 50 µl. The same volume of medium was added to the third row to measure the cytotoxicity of the compounds at the same concentrations as those used to measure the antiviral activity. After two hours of incubation, a suspension (4 x 10⁵ cells/ml) of HeLa

- cells was added to all wells in a volume of 50 μ l. The cultures were incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO₂ atmosphere. Seven days after infection the cytotoxicity and the antiviral activity was examined spectrophotometrically. To each well of the microtiter tray, 25 μ l of a solution of MTT (3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide) was added. The trays were further incubated at 37°C for 2 hours, after which the medium was removed from each cup. Solubilization of the formazan crystals was achieved by adding 100 μ l 2-propanol. Complete dissolution of the formazan crystals were obtained after the trays have been placed on a plate shaker for 10 min. Finally, the absorbances were read in an eight-channel computer-controlled photometer (Multiskan MCC, Flow Laboratories) at two wavelengths (540 and 690 nm). The absorbance measured at 690 nm was automatically subtracted from the absorbance at 540 nm, so as to eliminate the effects of non-specific absorption.

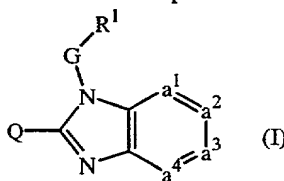
Particular IC₅₀, CC₅₀ and SI values are listed in Table 18 hereinbelow.

15 Table 18

Co. No.	IC ₅₀ (μ M)	CC ₅₀ (μ M)	SI
290	0.00013	>0.010	>79
292	0.00032	63.85	199526
351	0.00063	50.04	79433
297	0.00251	>99.93	>39811
296	0.00631	19.95	3162
27	0.0126	>100.08	>7943
192	0.0631	63.1	1000
144	0.1259	50.11	398
222	0.5012	39.59	79
142	1.2589	40.28	32
145	2.5119	>50.24	>20

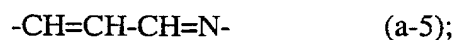
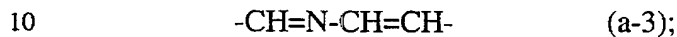
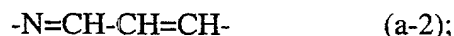
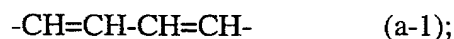
Claims

1. Use of a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, wherein the compound is a compound of formula



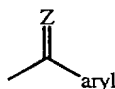
- 5 a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

-a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a bivalent radical of formula



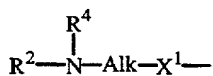
wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,

- 15 C₁₋₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₄alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or a radical of formula

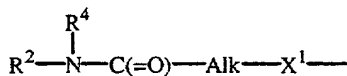


wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

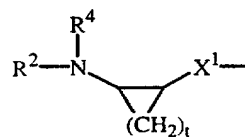
- 20 Q is a radical of formula



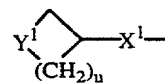
(b-1)



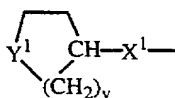
(b-2)



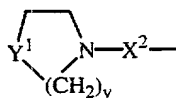
(b-3)



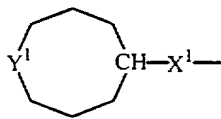
(b-4)



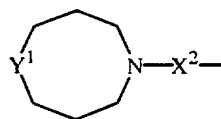
(b-5)



(b-6)



(b-7)



(b-8)

- 25 wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y^1 is a bivalent radical of formula $-NR^2-$ or $-CH(NR^2R^4)-$;

X^1 is NR^4 , S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, O, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$, $CH(OH)$, $CH(CH_3)$, $CH(OCH_3)$, $CH(SCH_3)$, $CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b})$, CH_2-NR^4 or NR^4-CH_2 ;

X^2 is a direct bond, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, NR^4 , $C_{1-4}alkyl-NR^4$, $NR^4-C_{1-4}alkyl$;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R^3 ; with the proviso that when R^3 is hydroxy or $C_{1-6}alkyloxy$, then R^3 can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or $C_{1-10}alkanediyl$;

R^1 is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxy$, $C_{1-6}alkylthio$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxyC_{1-6}alkyl$, aryl, $arylC_{1-6}alkyl$, $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy$, hydroxy $C_{1-6}alkyl$, mono- or di($C_{1-6}alkyl$)amino, mono- or di($C_{1-6}alkyl$)amino $C_{1-6}alkyl$, polyhalo $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkylcarbonylamino$, $C_{1-6}alkyl-SO_2-NR^{5c}$, $aryl-SO_2-NR^{5c}$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxy carbonyl$, $-C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}$, $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$, halo $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$, $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ and mono- or di($C_{1-6}alkyl$)amino $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R^2 is hydrogen, formyl, $C_{1-6}alkylcarbonyl$, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, $C_{3-7}cycloalkyl$ substituted with $N(R^6)_2$, or $C_{1-10}alkyl$ substituted with $N(R^6)_2$ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, $C_{3-7}cycloalkyl$, $C_{2-5}alkanediyl$, piperidinyl, mono- or di($C_{1-6}alkyl$)amino, $C_{1-6}alkyloxy carbonylamino$, aryl and aryloxy;

R^3 is hydrogen, hydroxy, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkyloxy$, $arylC_{1-6}alkyl$ or $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy$;

R^4 is hydrogen, $C_{1-6}alkyl$ or $arylC_{1-6}alkyl$;

R^{5a} , R^{5b} , R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or $C_{1-6}alkyl$; or

R^{5a} and R^{5b} , or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula $-(CH_2)_s-$ wherein s is 4 or 5;

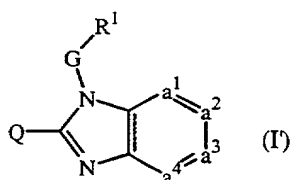
R^6 is hydrogen, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, formyl, hydroxy $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkylcarbonyl$ or $C_{1-6}alkyloxy carbonyl$;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, and C₁₋₆alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

5

2. A compound of formula (I')



a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

10 -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- represents a radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH- (a-1);

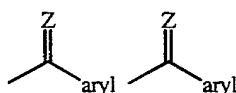
-N=CH-CH=CH- (a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH- (a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH- (a-4); or

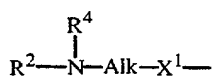
15 -CH=CH-CH=N- (a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono- or di(C₁₋₄alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, or a radical of formula

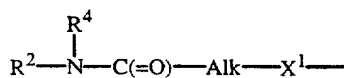


wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR^{5a}R^{5b}, =CH₂, =CH-C₁₋₆alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C₁₋₆alkyl;

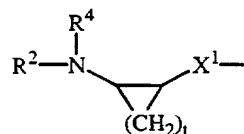
Q is a radical of formula



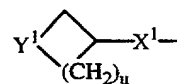
(b-1)



(b-2)



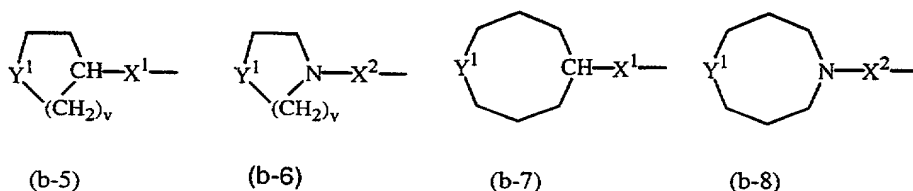
(b-3)



(b-4)

25

-95-



wherein Alk is C₁₋₆alkanediyl;

Y¹ is a bivalent radical of formula -NR²- or -CH(NR²R⁴)-;

X¹ is NR⁴, S, S(=O), S(=O)₂, O, CH₂, C(=O), C(=CH₂), CH(OH), CH(CH₃),
 5 CH(OCH₃), CH(SCH₃), CH(NR^{5a}R^{5b}), CH₂-NR⁴ or NR⁴-CH₂;

X² is a direct bond, CH₂, C(=O), NR⁴, C₁₋₄alkyl-NR⁴, NR⁴-C₁₋₄alkyl;

t is 2, 3, 4 or 5;

u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5;

v is 2 or 3; and

- 10 whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R³; with the proviso that when R³ is hydroxy or C₁₋₆alkyloxy, then R³ can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C₁₋₁₀alkanediyl;

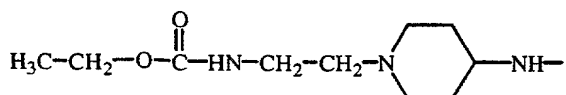
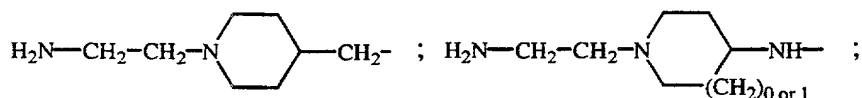
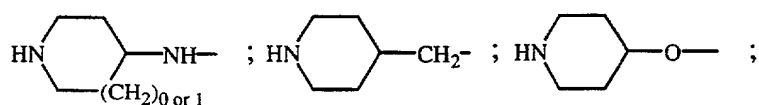
- 15 R¹ is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, C₁₋₆alkylthio, C₁₋₆alkyloxyC₁₋₆alkyl, aryl, arylC₁₋₆alkyl, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy, hydroxyC₁₋₆alkyl, mono-or
 20 di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, polyhaloC₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆alkyl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, aryl-SO₂-NR^{5c}-, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}, HO(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, halo(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, C₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-, arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n- and mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino(-CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-;
 each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- 25 R² is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl substituted with N(R⁶)₂ and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C₃₋₇cycloalkyl, C₂₋₅alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C₁₋₆alkyl)amino, C₁₋₆alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
- 30 R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyloxy, arylC₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyloxy;
 R⁴ is hydrogen, C₁₋₆alkyl or arylC₁₋₆alkyl;
 R^{5a}, R^{5b}, R^{5c} and R^{5d} each independently are hydrogen or C₁₋₆alkyl; or

R^{5a} and R^{5b} , or R^{5c} and R^{5d} taken together form a bivalent radical of formula $-(CH_2)_s-$ wherein s is 4 or 5;

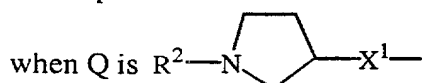
R^6 is hydrogen, C_{1-4} alkyl, formyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkylcarbonyl or C_{1-6} alkyloxycarbonyl;

- 5 aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, polyhalo C_{1-6} alkyl, and C_{1-6} alkyloxy;

provided that when G is methylene, and R^1 is 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 6-methyl-2-pyridyl, 2-pyrazinyl or 5-methyl-imidazol-4-yl, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ is $-CH=CH-CH=CH-$ or
 10 $-N=CH-CH=CH-$, then Q is other than

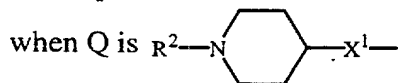


3. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply :



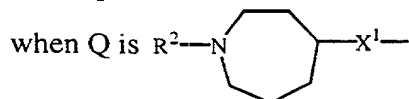
- wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, $\text{S}(=\text{O})$, $\text{S}(=\text{O})_2$, CH_2 , $\text{C}(=\text{O})$, $\text{C}(=\text{CH}_2)$ or $\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)$, then
 15 R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

4. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply :



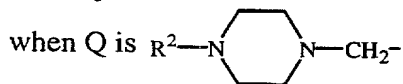
- wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, $\text{S}(=\text{O})$, $\text{S}(=\text{O})_2$, CH_2 , $\text{C}(=\text{O})$, $\text{C}(=\text{CH}_2)$ or $\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)$, then
 20 R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyridyl substituted with 1 or 2 C_{1-6} alkyloxy, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

- 25 5. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply :



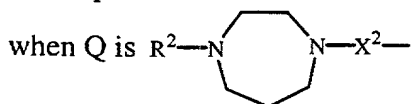
wherein X^1 is NR^4 , O, S, $S(=O)$, $S(=O)_2$, CH_2 , $C(=O)$, $C(=CH_2)$ or $CH(CH_3)$, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

- 5 6. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply :



then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

- 10 7. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply :



wherein X^2 is CH_2 or a direct bond, then R^1 is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl.

- 15 8. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the compound is selected from
 (\pm)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1*H*-
 benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;
 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-3-
 20 pyridinol; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-
 dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; (\pm)-
N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2-
 pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-
 hydroxypropyl)amino]-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; *N*-[1-
 25 (2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2-
 pyridinyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; (\pm)-*N*-
 [1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-
 5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-
 piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1*H*-
 30 benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-methyl-
 1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-
 aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1*H*-
 benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; (\pm)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-
 methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1*H*-
 35 benzimidazol-2-amine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-

6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-3-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1); (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; (±)-*N*-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

9. A compound selected from

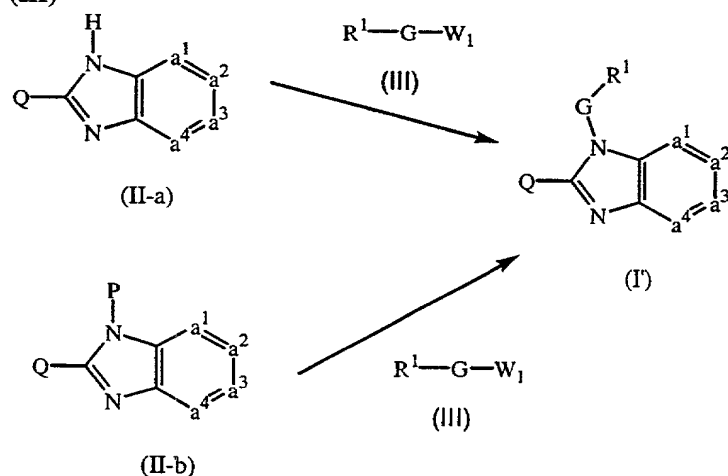
2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[3-[[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridine-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperidineetanamine; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; *N*-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-2-amine; 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-

oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperazineethanamine;
 N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-
 amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-
 yl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride; 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-
 4-piperidinyl]amino]-*1H*-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-2-oxazolemethanol
 tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3-methyl-5-
 isoxazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-
 [[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-
 piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1); ethyl
 5-[[2-[[1-[2-[[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]amino]-
1H-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate; 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4-
 thiazolyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine; N-[1-(2-
 aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-
 amine; ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-7-methyl-3H-
 imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-
 [[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-
 benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2-
 pyridinyl)methyl]-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; N-[1-(6-
 methyl-2-pyridinyl)-*1H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4-
 piperidinamine;
 a prodrug, *N*-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and
 stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

10. A compound as claimed in anyone of claims 2 to 9 for use as a medicine.
11. Use of a compound as claimed in claim 9 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections.
12. Use of a compound according to claim 1 or 11 wherein said viral infection is a respiratory syncytial virus infection.
13. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 2 or claim 9.
14. A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 13 characterized in that a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is intimately mixed with a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 2 or claim 9.

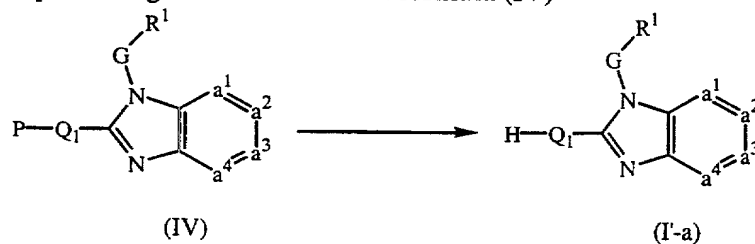
15. A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 2, characterized by

- a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula (III)



with R¹, G, Q and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and W₁ being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;

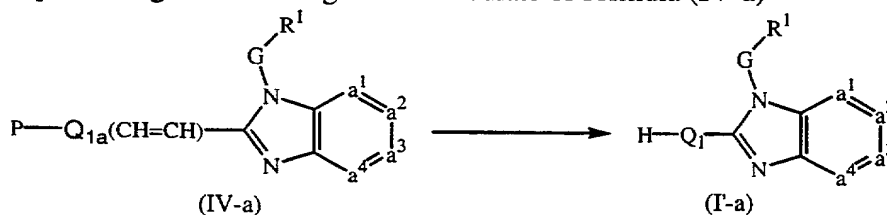
- 10 b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)



with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

15

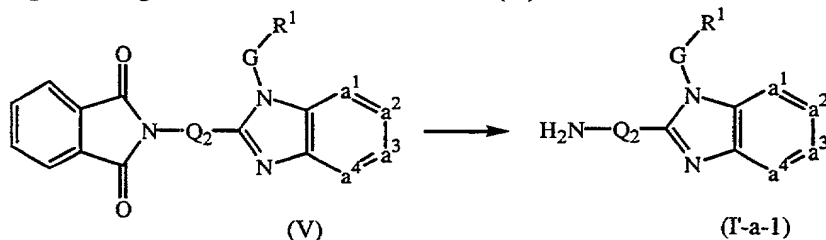
- c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)



with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, H-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is hydrogen,

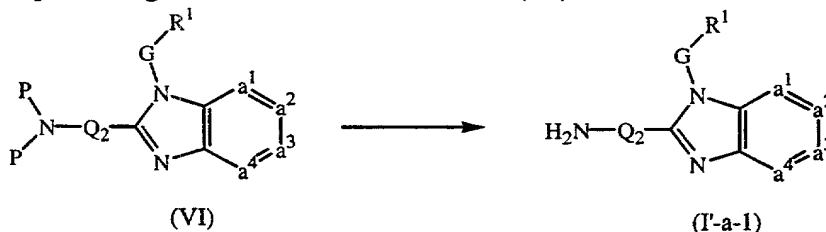
$Q_{1a}(\text{CH}=\text{CH})$ being defined as Q_1 provided that Q_1 comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group

d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)



5 with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and $\text{H}_2\text{N}-Q_2$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen;

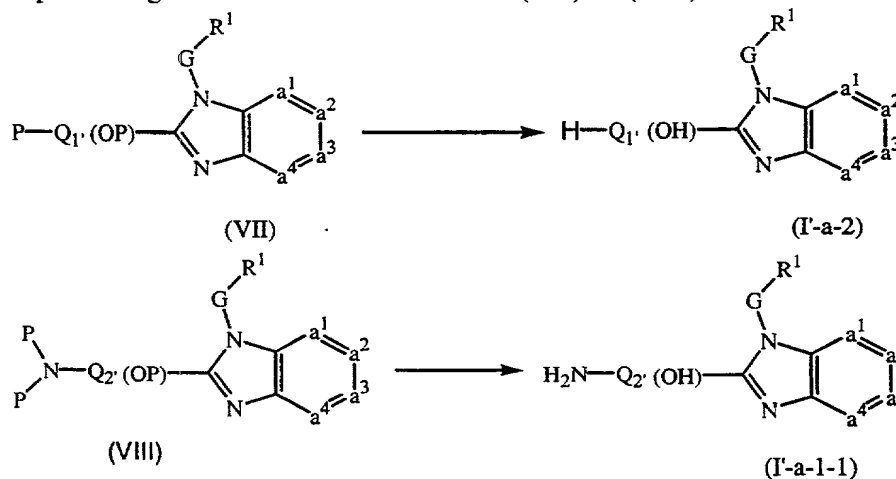
e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)



10

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and $\text{H}_2\text{N}-Q_2$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

15 f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)

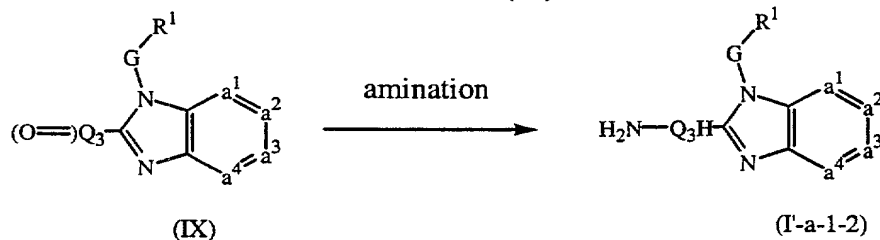


20

with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, $\text{H}-Q_1'(\text{OH})$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, $\text{H}_2\text{N}-Q_2'(\text{OH})$ being defined as Q

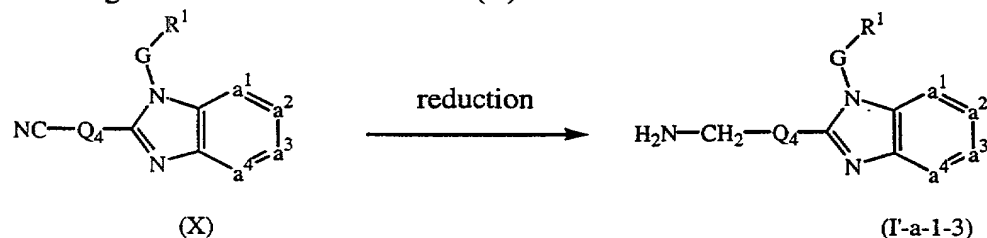
according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

- g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)



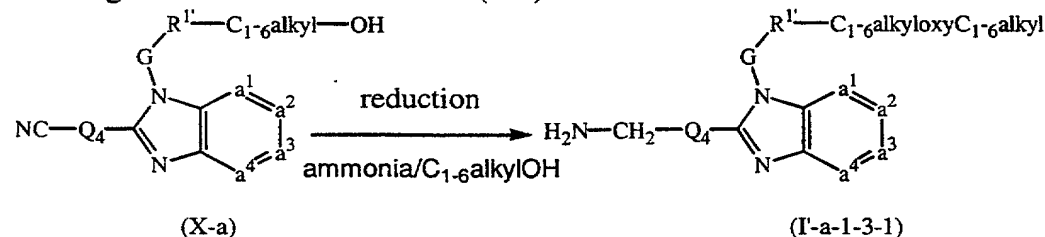
with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and H_2N-Q_3H being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R^6 substituents are hydrogen or R^2 and R^4 are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R^6 , or R^2 and R^4 substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

- h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)



with R^1 , G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

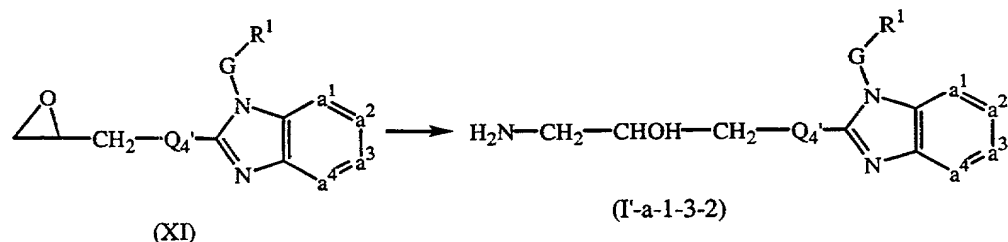
- i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)



with G, and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a $-CH_2-NH_2$ moiety, and $R^{1'}$ being defined as R^1 according to claim 2 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

- j) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)

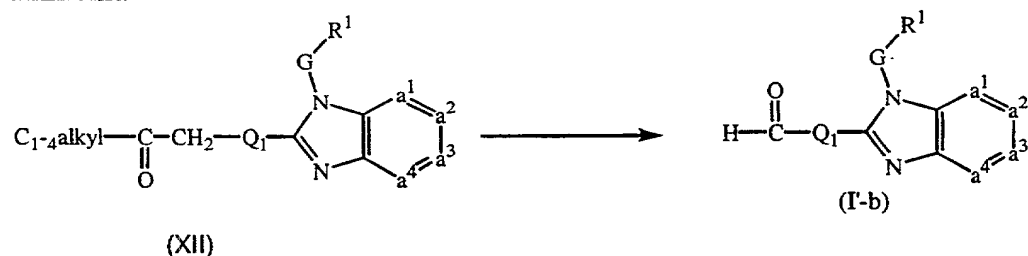
-103-



with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H₂N-CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-Q₄' being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a CH₂-CHOH-CH₂-NH₂ moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

5

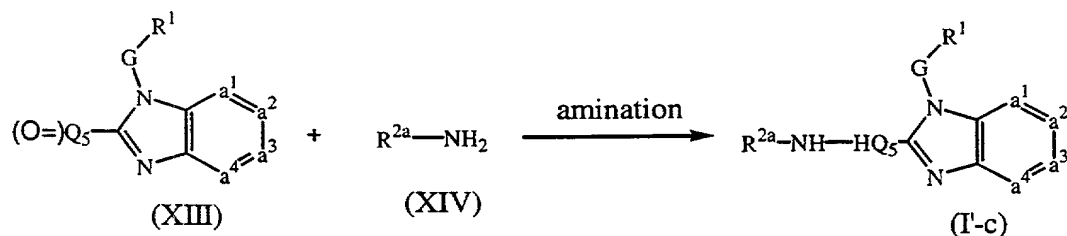
- k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia



with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and H-C(=O)-Q₁ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² or at least one R⁶ substituent is formyl;

10

- l) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)



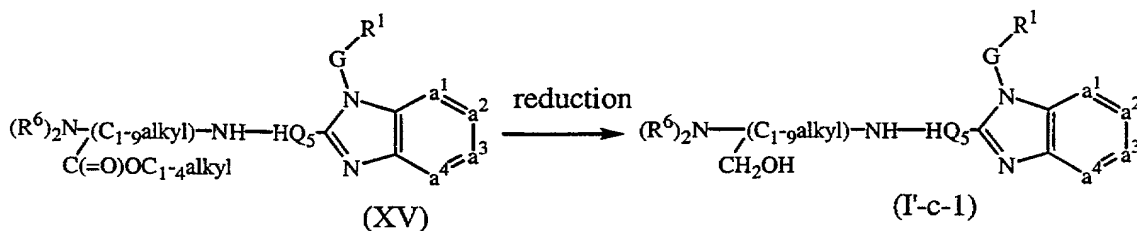
15

with R¹, G, and -a¹=a²-a³=a⁴- defined as in claim 2, and R^{2a}-NH-HQ₅ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R² is other than hydrogen and is represented by R^{2a}, R⁴ is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R² and R⁴ substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

20

- m) reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)

-104-

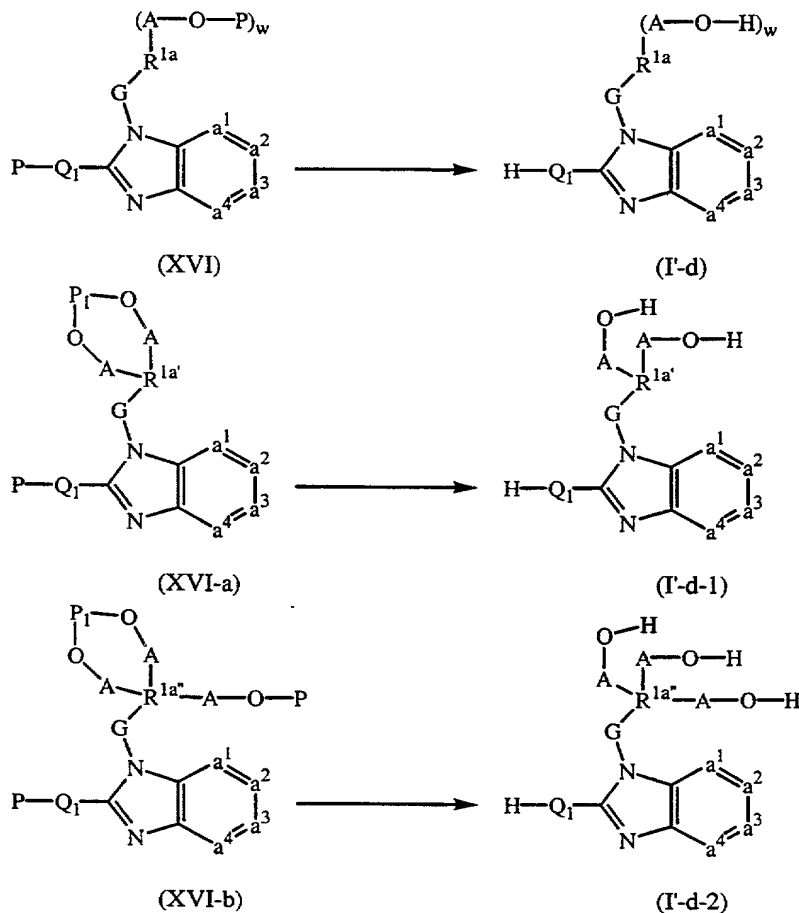


with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and

$(R^6)_2N-[(C_{1-9}alkyl)CH_2OH]-NH-HQ_5$ being defined as Q according to claim 2

provided that R^2 is other than hydrogen and is represented by $C_{1-10}alkyl$ substituted with $N(R_6)_2$ and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, and provided that R^4 is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R^2 and R^4 substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)



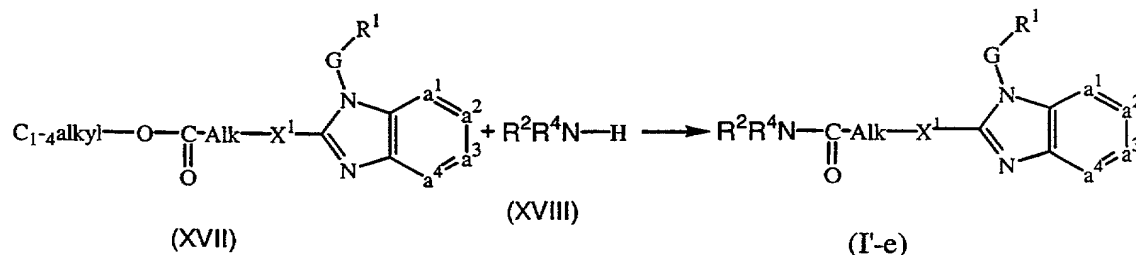
with G , and $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and $H-Q_1$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that R^2 or at least one R^6 substituent is hydrogen,

-105-

and $R^{1a}-(A-O-H)_w$, $R^{1a'}-(A-O-H)_2$ and $R^{1a''}-(A-O-H)_3$ being defined as R^1 according to claim 2 provided that R^1 is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxy C_{1-6} alkyl, or $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-$, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P_1 being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid.

5

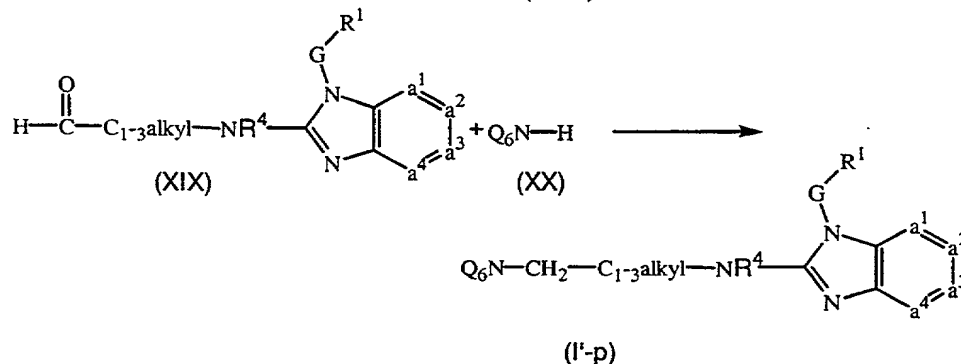
o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)



with R^1 , G , $-a^1=a^2=a^3=a^4-$, Alk , X^1 , R^2 and R^4 defined as in claim 2, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

10

p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)



with R^1 , G , and $-a^1=a^2=a^3=a^4-$ defined as in claim 2, and $\text{Q}_6\text{N}-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}_{1-3}\text{alkyl}-\text{NR}^4$ being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that in the definition of Q , X^2 is $\text{C}_{2-4}\text{alkyl}-\text{NR}^4$, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

15

and, if desired, converting compounds of formula (I') into each other following art-known transformations, and further, if desired, converting the compounds of formula (I'), into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid, or into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with a base, or conversely, converting the acid addition salt form into the free base by treatment with alkali, or converting the base addition salt into the free acid by treatment with acid; and, if desired, preparing stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or *N*-oxide forms thereof.

25

-106-

16. A product containing (a) a compound as defined in claim 2 or 9, and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.
- 5 17. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredients (a) a compound as defined in claim 2 or 9, and (b) another antiviral compound.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → +

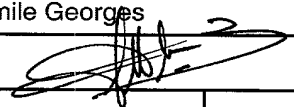
PTO/SB/02A (3-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet

Page 3 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:				<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor			
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname			
Kathleen Petrus Marie-José				Meersman			
Inventor's Signature						Date	
Residence: City	Wechelderzande	State		Country	Belgium	Citizenship	Belgium
Post Office Address Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30							
Post Office Address							
City	Beerse	State		ZIP	2340	Country	Belgium
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:				<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor			
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname			
François Maria				Sommen			
Inventor's Signature						Date	
Residence: City	Wortel	State		Country	Belgium	Citizenship	Belgium
Post Office Address Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30							
Post Office Address							
City	Beerse	State		ZIP	2340	Country	Belgium
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:				<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor			
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname			
Jérôme Emile Georges				Guillemont			
Inventor's Signature						Date	
Residence: City	Ande	State		Country	France	Citizenship	France
Post Office Address Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003							
Post Office Address							
City	F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux	State		ZIP	Cedex 9	Country	France

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → ☐

PTO/SB/02A (3-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet

Page 4 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:

☐ A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor

Given Name (first and middle [if any])

Family Name or Surname

Jean Fernand Armand

Lacrampe

Inventor's
Signature

Date

10/15/01

Residence: City

Le Mesnil-Esnard

State

Country

France

Citizenship

France

Post Office Address

Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003

Post Office Address

City

F-92787 Issy-les-
Moulineaux

State

ZIP

Cedex 9

Country

France

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:

☐ A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor

Given Name (first and middle [if any])

Family Name or Surname

Koenraad Jozef Lodewijk Marcel

Andries

Inventor's
Signature

Date

Residence: City

Beerse

State

Country

Belgium

Citizenship

Belgium

Post Office Address

Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30

Post Office Address

City

Beerse

State

ZIP

2340

Country

Belgium

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:

☐ A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor

Given Name (first and middle [if any])

Family Name or Surname

Inventor's
Signature

Date

Residence: City

State

Country

Citizenship

Post Office Address

Post Office Address

City

State

ZIP

Country

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → ☐

PTO/SB/01 (12-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/00 OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN PATENT APPLICATION (37 CFR 1.63) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Declaration Submitted with Initial Filing OR <input type="checkbox"/> Declaration Submitted after Initial Filing (surcharge (37 CFR 1.16 (e)) required)	Attorney Docket Number	JAB 1498-PCT-USA
	First Named Inventor	Frans E. Janssens
	COMPLETE IF KNOWN	
	Application Number	/
	Filing Date	
	Group Art Unit	
	Examiner Name	

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address, and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

the specification of which
☐ is attached hereto
OR
☒ was filed on (MM/DD/YYYY) **06/20/2000** as United States Application Number or PCT International Application Number **PCT/EP00/05676** and was amended on (MM/DD/YYYY) (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to above

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or 365(a) of any PCT international application which designated at least one country other than the United States of America, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or of any PCT international application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed

Prior Foreign Application Number(s)	Country	Foreign Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Priority Not Claimed	Certified Copy Attached?	
				YES	NO
99.202.087.5	EP	06/28/1999	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
00.200.452.1	EP	02/11/2000	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

☐ Additional foreign application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto:

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

Application Number(s)	Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)

☐ Additional provisional application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.

[Page 1 of 4]

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → +

PTO/SB/02A (3-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/98 OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet

Page 3 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:				<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor			
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname			
<u>Kathleen Petrus Marie-José</u>				<u>Meersman</u>			
Inventor's Signature	<u>[Signature]</u>			Date	<u>Oct. 12, 2001</u>		
Residence: City	<u>Wechelderzande</u>	State		Country	<u>BEL</u>	Citizenship	<u>Belgium</u>
Post Office Address <u>Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30</u>							
Post Office Address							
City	<u>Beerse</u>	State		ZIP	<u>2340</u>	Country	<u>Belgium</u>
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:				<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor			
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname			
<u>François Maria</u>				<u>Sommen</u>			
Inventor's Signature	<u>[Signature]</u>			Date	<u>Oct. 12, 2001</u>		
Residence: City	<u>Wortel</u>	State		Country	<u>BEL</u>	Citizenship	<u>Belgium</u>
Post Office Address <u>Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30</u>							
Post Office Address							
City	<u>Beerse</u>	State		ZIP	<u>2340</u>	Country	<u>Belgium</u>
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:				<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor			
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname			
<u>Jérôme Emile Georges</u>				<u>Guillemont</u>			
Inventor's Signature				Date			
Residence: City	<u>Ande</u>	State		Country	<u>FR</u>	Citizenship	<u>France</u>
Post Office Address <u>Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003</u>							
Post Office Address							
City	<u>F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux</u>	State		ZIP	<u>Cedex 9</u>	Country	<u>France</u>

Burden Hour Statement. This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → ☐

PTO/SB/01 (12-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/00 OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION — Utility or Design Patent Application

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120 of any United States application(s), or 365(c) of any PCT international application designating the United States of America, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States or PCT International application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT International filing date of this application.

U.S. Parent Application or PCT Parent Number	Parent Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Parent Patent Number (if applicable)

☐ Additional U.S. or PCT international application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.

As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following registered practitioner(s) to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith:

☐ Customer Number

OR

☒ Registered practitioner(s) name/registration number listed below

Place Customer
Number Bar Code
Label here

Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number
Michael Stark	32,495	Myra McCormack	36,602
Steven P. Berman	24,772	Ellen C. Coletti	34,140
Andrea L. Colby	30,194	Mary A. Appollina	34,087

☐ Additional registered practitioner(s) named on supplemental Registered Practitioner Information sheet PTO/SB/02C attached hereto.

Direct all correspondence to: ☐ Customer Number or Bar Code Label ☒ Correspondence address below

Name	Philip S. Johnson				
Address	Johnson & Johnson				
Address	One Johnson & Johnson Plaza				
City	New Brunswick	State	NJ	ZIP	08933-7003
Country	USA	Telephone	(732) 524-2359	Fax	(732) 524-2808

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Name of Sole or First Inventor:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor	
Given Name (first and middle (if any))		Family Name or Surname	
Frans Eduard		Janssens	
Inventor's Signature	Date		Oct., 12 2001
Residence: City	Bonheiden	State	Country Belgium
Post Office Address	Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30		
Post Office Address			
City	Beerse	State	ZIP 2340
Country	Belgium		

☒ Additional inventors are being named on the 2 supplemental Additional Inventor(s) sheet(s) PTO/SB/02A attached hereto

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → ☐

PTO/SB/01 (12-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/00. OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN PATENT APPLICATION (37 CFR 1.63) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Declaration Submitted with Initial Filing OR <input type="checkbox"/> Declaration Submitted after Initial Filing (surcharge (37 CFR 1.16 (e)) required)	Attorney Docket Number	JAB 1498-PCT-USA
	First Named Inventor	Frans E. Janssens
	COMPLETE IF KNOWN	
	Application Number	/
	Filing Date	
	Group Art Unit	
	Examiner Name	

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address, and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

the specification of which

☐ is attached hereto
OR

☒ was filed on (MM/DD/YYYY) 06/20/2000 as United States Application Number or PCT International

Application Number PCT/EP00/05676 and was amended on (MM/DD/YYYY) (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56.

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or 365(a) of any PCT international application which designated at least one country other than the United States of America, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or of any PCT international application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

Prior Foreign Application Number(s)	Country	Foreign Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Priority Not Claimed	Certified Copy Attached?	
				YES	NO
99.202.087.5 00.200.452.1	EP	06/28/1999	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	EP	02/11/2000	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

☐ Additional foreign application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto:

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

Application Number(s)	Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	<input type="checkbox"/> Additional provisional application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.

[Page 1 of 4]

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → ☐

PTO/SB/01 (12-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/00. OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION — Utility or Design Patent Application

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120 of any United States application(s), or 365(c) of any PCT international application designating the United States of America, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States or PCT international application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application.

U.S. Parent Application or PCT Parent Number	Parent Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Parent Patent Number (if applicable)

☐ Additional U.S. or PCT international application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.

As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following registered practitioner(s) to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith:

☐ Customer Number

OR

☒ Registered practitioner(s) name/registration number listed below

Place Customer
Number Bar Code
Label here

Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number
Michael Stark	32,495	Myra McCormack	36,602
Steven P. Berman	24,772	Ellen C. Coletti	34,140
Andrea L. Colby	30,194	Mary A. Appollina	34,087

☐ Additional registered practitioner(s) named on supplemental Registered Practitioner Information sheet PTO/SB/02C attached hereto.

Direct all correspondence to: ☐ Customer Number or Bar Code Label ☒ Correspondence address below

Name	Philip S. Johnson				
Address	Johnson & Johnson				
Address	One Johnson & Johnson Plaza				
City	New Brunswick	State	NJ	ZIP	08933-7003
Country	USA	Telephone	(732) 524-2359	Fax	(732) 524-2808

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Name of Sole or First Inventor:

☐ A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor

Given Name (first and middle [if any])		Family Name or Surname	
Frans Eduard		Janssens	
Inventor's Signature	Date		
Residence: City	Bonheiden	State	Country Belgium
Post Office Address	Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30		
Post Office Address			
City	Beerse	State	ZIP 2340
		Country	Belgium

☒ Additional inventors are being named on the 2 supplemental Additional Inventor(s) sheet(s) PTO/SB/02A attached hereto

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → +

PTO/SB/02A (3-97)
Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet

Page 4 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:

☐ A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor

Given Name (first and middle [if any])

Family Name or Surname

Jean Fernand Armand

Lacrampe

Inventor's
Signature

Date

Residence: City

Le Mesnil-Esnard

State

Country

France

Citizenship

France

Post Office Address

Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003

Post Office Address

City

F-92787 Issy-les-
Moulineaux

State

ZIP

Cedex 9

Country

France

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:

☐ A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor

Given Name (first and middle [if any])

Family Name or Surname

Koenraad Jozef Lodewijk Marcel

Andries

Inventor's
Signature

Date

Oct. 12,
2001

Residence: City

Beerse

State

Country

Belgium

Citizenship

Belgium

Post Office Address

Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30

Post Office Address

City

Beerse

State

ZIP

2340

Country

Belgium

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:

☐ A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor

Given Name (first and middle [if any])

Family Name or Surname

Inventor's
Signature

Date

Residence: City

State

Country

Citizenship

Post Office Address

Post Office Address

City

State

ZIP

Country

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231